



4.B.

4. b

Sold at ALFRED B. MANN'S
SALE, in 1845, for \$125.00.

1973, Edwards offered at \$140 -

4. b.

Newcastle, Earl of.

A NEW
METHOD,
AND
Extraordinary Invention,
TO DRESS
HORSES,

AND
WORK Them according to *NATURE*:
AS ALSO,

To Perfect *Nature* by the Subtilty of *Art*;
Which was never found out, but by

THE

Thrice Noble, High, and Puissant *PRINCE*

William Cavendishe,

Duke, Marquess, and Earl of *Newcastle*; Earl of *Ogle*; Viscount *Mansfield*; and Baron of *Bolsover*, of *Ogle*, of *Bertram*, *Bothal*, and *Hepple*: Gentleman of His Majesties Bed-chamber; One of His Majesties most Honourable Privy-Council; Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter; His Majesties Lieutenant of the County and Town of *Nottingham*; and Justice in *Ayre Trent-North*: Who had the honour to be Governour to our most Glorious King, and Gracious Sovereign, in His Youth, when He was Prince of *Wales*; and soon after was made Captain General of all the Provinces beyond the River of *Trent*, and other Parts of the Kingdom of *England*; with Power, by a special Commission, to make Knights.

L O N D O N,

Printed by *Tho. Milbourn*, in the Year 1667.

*This Book was sent me as a present
from his Grace the Duke of Newcastle*

Wm. Cav.

Dartmouth

ENTRUSTED TO THE

HORSES

WALK THEM TO THE

TO THE HOUSE BY THE

IT IS A VERY

THE

William C. Ordway

William C. Ordway, Esq., of
Dartmouth, N. H., has been
appointed to the position of
Agent for the sale of the
Horse, and will be found
at the office of the
Dartmouth College, where
he will be ready to receive
orders for the same.

Wm. C. Ordway, Agent.



To His most Sacred
M A J E S T Y
Charles the Second,

By the Grace of God, King of *Great Britain, France,*
and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c.

May it please Your Majesty,

MY First Book of *Horse-manship*, Printed in *French*, had the honour of Your Patronage; and I presume again, to Dedicate this Second, in *English*, to Your Majesty; who being not only the greatest Monarch in *Christendome*, but a King that loves Justice and Truth, can best judge of Books, which contain, I dare say, the perfect and only Truth of *Horse-manship*. My Duty, and particular Affection to Your Person, are sufficient

A 2 Motives

Motives to me, to consecrate, not Books only, but my self, and mine, and all that belongs to us, to Your Majesties service: But besides that, Your Favours to me are so many, and so great; That what I am, and have, ought justly to be sacrificed to Your Will and Pleasure, as Yours; wherein I joy more, than if it was mine. Your Wisdom, Sir, Valour, and Conduct, makes all Your Neighbours confess, That Your Majesty is the most Glorious King that ever Reign'd; And that God will prosper You, in all Your great Actions, and give Your Majesty an happy and long Reign, to the joy and comfort of all Your Loyal Subjects, is both heartily Wish'd, and fervently Pray'd for, by

Your Majesties

most Obedient Creature,

William Newcastle.

TO



TO THE
READERS.

HAVING past the greatest part of my long
Exile at Antwerp, one of the finest
Cities in the World, whose Inhabi-
tants are deservedly Famous, for
their extraordinary Civilities to Strangers, of which I
must acknowledge to have receiv'd a great many from
them: I did, during that time, Publish, in French,
a Book of Horse-manship; and having again, since
my Return to my Native Country, had much leisure,
in my solitary Country Life, to recollect my Thoughts,
and try new Experiments about that Art; I now, for
the more particular Satisfaction of my Country-men,
Print this second Book, in English; which being nei-
ther a Translation of the first, nor an absolutely ne-
(b) cessary

cessary Addition to it, may be of use by it self, without the other, as the other hath been hitherto, and is still, without this; but both together will questionless do best.

I cannot mention Antwerp, upon the score of my Book, but I must also take notice of the Honour I have receiv'd there, from many Noble great Persons, who did me the favour to see my Mannage; and of the things they was pleased to say, upon occasion of what they saw there; which will be in lieu of Encomiums, in the behalf of Horses, and of Horsemanship, very proper in this place.

When I had the honour to wait on Don John of Austria, at Antwerp, brought to him by my Lord of Bristol, his Highness was pleas'd to use me extreme Civilly; and to ask both then, and at several other times, for my Book of Horsemanship, before it was Printed; and to receive it with great Satisfaction, when I presented his Highness with One: But he did not see my Horses, which, in above 20. Coaches, all the Spaniards of his Court, went to my Mannage to see; with many Noble-Men of Flanders, as the Duke of Ascot, and others, before whom

whom I Rid my self, three Horses, and my Esquier,
five. Being return'd to Don John, He ask'd them,
Whether my Horses was as Rare, as their Re-
putation was Great: To which they answer'd,
That my Horses was such, that they wanted no-
thing of Reasonable Creatures, but Speaking.
And the Marques of Seralvo, Master of the Horse
to his Highness, and Governour of the Castle of
Antwerp, told his Highness, That he had ask'd
me, What Horses I lik'd best: And that I had
answer'd, There were Good and Bad of all Nati-
ons; but that the Barbes were the Gentlemen of
Horse-kind, and Spanish-Horses the Princes. Which
Answer did infinitely please the Spaniards: And it is
very true, That Horses are so as I said.

The Marques of Carasena was so civilly earnest
to see me Ride, that he was pleas'd to say, It would
be a great Satisfaction to him, to see me on Horse-
back, though the Horse should but Walk. And
seeing that no Excuses would serve, (though I did
use many) I was contented to satisfy his so obliging
a Curiosity; and told him, I would obey his Com-
mands, though I thought I should hardly be able

to Sit in the Saddle. Two dayes after he came to my Mannage, and I Rid first a Spanish-Horse, call'd Le Superbe, of a Light-Bay, a beautiful Horse; and though Hard to be Rid, yet when he was Hitt Right, he was the Readiest Horse in the World: He went in Corvets forward, backward, sidewayes, on both Hands; made the Cross perfectly upon his Voltoes; and did Change upon his Voltoes so Just, without breaking Time, that no Musitian could keep Time better; and went Terra a Terra Perfectly. The second Horse I Rid, was another Spanish Horse, call'd Le Genty; and was Rightly named so, for he was the finest Shap'd Horse that ever I saw, and the neatest; A Brown-Bay, with a White-Star in his Forehead; No Horse ever went Terra a Terra like him, so just, and so easie; And for the Piroyte in his Length, so just, and so swift, that the Standers by could hardly see the Rider's Face when he went; And truly, when he had done, I was so Dizzey, that I could hardly Sit in the Saddle: He went also so exactly in Corvets forwards, as no Horse can goe better, and yet he had no great Strength; whence it ap-
pears,

pears, *That a Horse of Agility, Lightness, Spirit, Well-temper'd, and of a good Disposition, is much better than a Horse that hath only Strength; And that a most mighty and great Dutch-Brewer's Horse, wanting Spirit and Agility, can never goe well in the Mannage. The third and last Horse I Rid then, was a Barbe, that went a Metz-Ayre, very High, both Forward, and upon his Voltoes, and Terra a Terra. And when I had done Riding, the Marques of Carasena seem'd to be very well satisfied; and some Spaniards that were with him, cross'd themselves, and cried, Miraculo.*

Many French Gentlemen, and Persons of the greatest Quality of that Nation, did me the favour to see my Horses; and the Prince of Conde himself, with several Noble-men, and Officers, was pleas'd to take the pains to goe twice to my Mannage: And though the French think, That all the Horse-manship in the World is in France; yet one of them, and he a very great Man in his Country, was heard say, directing his Speech to me: Par Dieu (Monsieur) il est bien hardi qui monte devant vous: And another said, at another time: Il n'y a plus de Seigneur comme vous en Angleterre.

(c) *Among*

Among many great Persons, of which the vast Country of Germany affords abundance, who, for the most part, delight to travel; the Landgrave of Hesse, did not only do me the honour to Visit me, and see my Horses; but, being return'd to his Country, was pleas'd to shew, by a very kind Letter, That he had not forgotten me, nor the Love he had observ'd I have for Horses; being pleas'd to promise, He would send me two of his own Breed; but soon after, he was Kill'd in the Warrs the King of Swede made with the King of Poland.

As poor as I was in those dayes, I made shift to buy, at several times, four Barbes, five Spanish-Horses, and many Dutch-Horses; all the most Excellent Horses that could be; and among them a Grey Leaping-Horse, the most beautiful that ever I saw; and who went exceeding High and Just in Leaps, without any Help at all; as also upon the Ground; and Terra a Terra, beyond all other Horses; and he did look as if he had been above the Rate of Horse-kind. The Duke of Guise bearing of him, Two Gentlemen, a French-Rider, and an Englishman, wrote to me, That if I would part with him, the Duke of Guise would give me 600. Pistolls

rolls for him; but he was Dead three dayes before I receiv'd their Letter; and had he Liv'd, I would not have taken any Money for him; for he was above Price: And besides, I was then too great a Peggarr, to think to be made Rich by the Sale of a Horse: I have bestow'd many Thousands of Pounds in Horses, and have given many; but never was a good Horse-Courser; Selling being none of my Professions.

The KING Himself, who is an Excellent Judge, both of Men, and Business; of Things of Use; and of Recreation; of Necessity, and of Ornament; did like that Horse very well: And having had the Honour, when I was His Governour, to be the first that Sat Him on Horse-back, and did instruct Him in the Art of Horse-manship; it is a great Satisfaction to me, to make mention here of the Joy I had then, to see, That His Majesty made my Horses goe better, than any Italian, or French-Riders (who had often Rid them) could do; And to hear Him say, That there are very few that Know Horses; Which was Knowingly said, and wisely judg'd of His Majesty: It being very certain, That all Men undertake to Ride them, but very few Know them, or can tell what they are good for. (c) 2 It

It would fill a Volume, to repeat all the Commendations that were given to Horſes, and to Horſe-maniſhip, by ſeveral worthy Gentlemen, of all Nations, High and Low-Dutch, Italians, Engliſh, French, Spaniards, Polacks, and Swedes, in my own private Riding-Houſe, at Antwerp; which, though very large, was often ſo full, that my Eſquier, Capt. Mazin, had hardly Room to Ride; But theſe few already ſpoken of, will ſerve very well inſtead of all: And after I have given an Account, That I have divided this whole Book in four Parts, and every Part in many Sections, and Paragraphs, wherein I never intended to obſerve any exact Method; I beſeech my Readers, to take in good part, That I have however ſet down, as clearly as I could, without the Help of any other Logick, but what Nature hath taught me, all the Obſervations about Horſes, and Horſe-maniſhip; which I have made, by a long, and chargeable, though I muſt needs ſay, very pleaſant, and ſatisfactory, Experience: And ſo

Farewell.



THE NEW METHOD,
AND
Extraordinary Invention
TO DRESS
HORSES.

THE FIRST PART.

*Of the several Authors that have Written of Horse-
manship, both Italians, French and English.*



His Noble Art was first begun and
Invented in *Italy*, and all the *French*
and other *Nations* went thither to
learn; the seate of *Horse-manship* being
at *Naples*: The first that ever Writ of
it was *Frederick Grison* a *Neapolitan*; and truly he
Writ like a *Horse-man*, and a great Master in the Art

B

for

for those times: *Henry the Eighth* sent for two *Italians* that were his Schollars, to come to him into *England*; and of one of them came all our *Alexanders*; and their Schollars fill'd the *Kingdom* with *Horse-men*.

Sir *Philip Sidney* brought an *Italian Rider*, one *Signior Romano*, to teach his Nephew *William Lord Herbert*, afterwards *Earl of Pembroke*; and the same Sir *Philip Sidney* brought also over an other *Italian Rider*, call'd *Signior Prospero*: The old *Earle of Leicester*, sent for an Excellent *Rider* out of *Italy*, call'd *Signior Claudio Curtio*, who writ a Book of *Horse-manship*, and is quoted by several *Italian Writers*; but I think, that very much of his Book is stolen out of *Grison*. *Laurentius Cussius* is another *Author*, none of the best, with Horrible Bitts. Then there is *Cesar Fieske*, who hath writ a Book much out of *Grison* too, where he meddles with Musick. There is another Book of *Horse-manship*, call'd *Gloria del Cavallo*, with long discourses, and much out of *Grison*. There is another *Italian Book* of *Horse-manship*, call'd *Cavallo Frenato de Pietro Antonio*, a *Neapolitan*; much stolen out of *Grison*: But his Book consists most of Bitts, to little purpose;

of Dressing Horses. 3

purpose; though they seem to be Great Curiosities. But the most Famous man that ever was in *Italy*, was at *Naples*, a *Neapolitan*, call'd *Signior Pignatel*; but he never Writ: *Monsieur La Broue* Rid under him five years: *Monsieur De Pluvinel* nine years: And *Monsieur St. Anthoine* many years. The *Liberty*, which is the best for *Bitts*, at this Day, we call *ALa Pignatel*.

These three aforementioned *French-men* that Rid under *Signior Pignatel*, fill'd *France* with *French Horse-men*; which before were fill'd with *Italians*. *Monsieur La Broue*, I believe, was the First that ever Writ of *Horse-manship*, in the *French Language*: and the first *French-man* that ever Writ in that Art; His Book is very Tedious, many *Words* for little *Matter*; and his first Book is absolutely all Stolen out of *Grifon*; and his second Book from *Signior Pignatell's Lessons*; But *La Broue*, to seem wiser than he was, and to make up a Book, divides a Circle into so many parts, to bring a *Horse* to a whole Circle, that it confounds a *Horse* more, and is harder for him, than to Work him upon a whole Circle at first: And for *La Broue's* third Book of *Bitts*, there is no great

4 The New Method

Matter in it. As for *Pluvinel*, no doubt but he was a Good *Horse-man*; but his Invention of the *Three Pillars*, of which his Book Pretends to be an absolute Method, is no more than an absolute *Routine*; and hath spoyl'd more *Horses*, than ever any Thing did; for *Horses* are not Made to the Hand and the Heel at all with them; nor will they go from the usual place where they are Ridden, nor well there neither. But my Book is stolen out of no Book, nor any mans Practice but my own, and is as True as it is New; and if any Man do not like it, it is a great Signe he understands it not: for there is no way for Dressing *Horses* like it; If it be not Good, I am sure it is the Best that hath been VVrit yet; what will be VVrit hereafter I know not.

I must tell you that the *Italian Writers* are Tedi-ous, and write more of Marks, Colours, Temperatures, Elements, Moon, Stars, Winds, and Bleedings, than of the *Art of Rideing*; only to make up a Book, though they wanted *Horse-manship*.

There was one *Signior Hannibal* a *Neapolitan* that came into *England* and serv'd the *Lord Walden*.

Monsieur St. Anthoine a *French-man*, was a very
good

of Dressing Horses. 5

good *Horse-man*, and sent over by *Henry* the Fourth of *France*, to teach Prince *Henry*; *Monsieur La Coste* was his Page, and Ridd excellently well, especially Leaping Horses. *Monsieur Boycler* Ridd under him too, and was an excellent *Horse-man*; *Monsieur Founteney*, which was either his Nephew, or his Natural Son; for he gave him All when he Dyed, was also a very good *Horse-man*, but none of these ever Writ any thing of *Horse-manship*. And the Best *Horse-man*, that ever I knew, is one of my own Breeding, and Rides by my *Method*, which is Captain *Maxine*, now a Query to the KING.

That it is a very Impertinent Error, and of great Prejudice, to think the Mannage Useless.

MAny say, that all things in the *Mannage* is nothing but Tricks, and Dancing, and Gam-balls, and of no Use: But by their Leave, whosoever sayes so, is very much Deceived; for a *Horse* that is well settled upon the Hand, and firm

C

and

6 The New Method

and Obedient to the Hand and Heels, Gallops the Field, and Changes as often, and just as you will, either without the Circle, or within the Circle, *Serpiger, Terra a Terra*, the *Piroite*, or what you will; and all is this upon the *Ground*, and every thing and *Particle* of it Useful; and so Useful, that a Good *Horse-man*, upon such a Horse, would have too much Advantage, in Conscience, of him that Talks against it, either in a single Combat, or in the *VVarrs*; for *A Ready-Horse* will Run, Stop, Turn, go Back; and if he Rise, he knows how to come Down again, and is so well on the Hand, as you cannot pull him Over with both your Hands; and so Obedient, that I will Run him on Fire, Water, or Sword, and he shall Obey me: And all This cannot be done but by the Art of *Riding*, and that in the *Mannage*.

But, What makes these *Men* speak against it? The first Reason, is, Because they are Ignorant, and so speak, as the *Wifest* men in the world must do, when they will speak of any thing they Know not, and think that *Talk* will carry it: But the *Main Reason* is this; They find they cannot *Ride* well;
nay,

of Dressing Horses. 7

may, indeed not at all, *A Horse of Mannage*, and they would be the Finest men in the world, for All things, though they will take Pains for Nothing; and because, forsooth, they cannot Ride by Inspiration, without taking Pains, therefore it is worth Nothing, and of no Use: But if every thing was Naught that they cannot do, there would be very few things Good in the World.

The next thing, is, That they think it a Disgrace for a Gentleman to do any thing Well. What! Be a *Rider*. Why not? Many Kings and Princes think themselves Graced with being Good *Horse-men*.

Our Gracious and most Excellent KING, is not only the Handsomest, and most Comely *Horse-man* in the World, but as Knowing and Understanding in the Art as any man; and no man makes a Horse go Better than I have seen some go under His MAJESTY the first time that ever He came upon their Backs, which is the Height and Quintessence of the Art; and yet I dare say the KING takes it for no Disgrace to be so Excellent a *Horse-man*: The Duke of YORK is also

8 The New Method

a very Good *Horfe-man*, and Both take it for an Honour, and no Disgrace; and think it a most useful and noble Quality for Princes.

The Duke of *Mommorancy*, Coneftable of *France*, and the first Gentleman of *Chriftendom*, was the Best *Horfe-man* in the World, and to this day the best *Branches* for Bitts was of his Invention, called *ALa Coneftable*; and fo he Devised the Best Spurs; and never any *Esquier* Ridd like him, being certainly the Best *Horfe-man* in the World, which he thought a Grace to him: The Prince of *Conde*, his Grand-child by the Princess his Mother, is an Excellent *Horfe-man*, and thinks it no Disgrace to him.

Most of the Princes in *France* highly Esteem it, and are good *Horfe-men*: nay, their King, at this present time, highly Esteems it, and is a Good *Horfe-man*; nor is any Gentleman in *France* Esteem'd that is not a good *Horfe-man*.

The great King of *Spain* Deceased, did not only Love it, and Understand it, but was absolutely the Best *Horfe-man* in all *Spain*.

I may therefore desire These men to be more
Mer-

of Dressing Horses. 9

Merciful, and to think it no Disgrace, to Them, to be *Horse-men*; but still the Old business will stick with them, which is, They cannot do it, and therefore it is Naught: A very good and senseless Reason! He that will take Pains for Nothing, shall never do any thing VVell; for Arts, Sciences, and good Qualities, come not by Instinct, but are got by great Labour, Study, and Practice; wherefore *These Men* will none (I thank you) till they be as Easily learnt, as the *Seven Deadly Sins*, *Railing*, and wearing *Fine Cloaths* and *Feathers*.

But let us see now, how *These Men* are on Horse-back, and what their Horses do under them. This *Cavalier* Seats as far Back in the Saddle as he can, his Leggs stretcht as far Forward before the Shoulders of the Horse, with his Toes out, that he may Spur him in the Shoulders; and Stoops in the Back, which they call a Comely Seat; not Knowing how to hold the Bridle in his Hand, nor Ghets at any Helps at all; and appears on Horse-back as if he were three quarters Foxt, so Ridiculous is that Seat: and having Sent to a Sadler, or a Bitt-maker, to Bitt his Horse, all is Well.

D

Being

10 The New Method

Being Mounted thus, as I tell you, you shall see his Ready *Horse of Use*, and his *Horse-manship*: When he would Turn him on the Right Hand, the Horse doth Turn on the Left; and when he would Turn him on the Left Hand, the Horse doth Turn on the Right: When he would Stop him, the Horse runs Away: When he would Put him Forward, the Horse runs Backward: When he would Put him Back, the Horse Riles, and comes Over with him, and there the Good *Horse-man* Lies, and must send for a Surgion, or a Bone-Setter, if he be not Kill'd: Nay, his Horse shall neither come neer Drum, Trumpet, or Colours, Pistol, or Sword; but he fetches Forty Figaries to Endanger him and his Horse: And this is the Excellent *Horse-man*, and the Ready *Horse of Use*. How is it Possible to be Otherwise, when the Horse knows not how to Obey either Hand or Heell, and the *Horse-man* is as Ignorant as he? Whence it followes, That there is Nothing to make a Sure Horse, but the *Mannage*.

I would have every *Horse* (that wears a Bitt) Gelding, or Nagg, wrought in the *Mannage*, to
be

of Dressing Horses. II

be firm on the Hand, both for Readiness, and Safety, were it for a *B: B: Judge*, or *Lady*: For without setting of the Hand, they are very Unuseful, and Dangerous.

I wonder how men are so Presumptuous, to think they can Ride as *Horse-men*, because they can Ride forward from *Barnet* to *London*, which every body can do; and I have seen *Women* to Ride Astride as well as they: They do not think of any Art, or Trade, as they do of *Horse-manship*, where they are all *Masters*: Which doth not Prove so, when they Ride.

I think I have Proved sufficiently their Errour, and Ignorance; and as fully Proved, That there is no *Useful Horse* but those that are *Made* in the *Mannage*.

The next thing, is, to tell you, That *Corvets*, and other *Ayres*, settles a Horse very well upon the Hand; makes him Leight before, and puts him upon the Hanches, which are all Useful for a Soldiers Horse; and makes him Stop upon the Hanches, which is very Useful for a man in Armes; for, did the Horse stop upon the Shoulders, he

D 2 would

would give his *Rider* (being Armed) such a Shock as would make his Bones Ake, was he never so Sound: Nay, to make a *Horse* go in Leaps, firms him on the Hand, which is Good for a Souldiers *Horse*.

But, sayes a Gallant, when I should have Use of him in the Field, then he will be playing Tricks: That Gallant is Deceived; for, the Helps to make *Horses* go in *Ayres*, and to make them go upon the *Ground*, are Several; and Good *Horsemen* have much ado to make them go in *Ayres*, with their best Helps; so that, if you let them alone, they will not trouble you; besides, two or three dayes March will make them, that they will not go in *Ayres*, if you would have them; and they are much the Readier to go on the *Ground*: Whereby you see, that there is no *Horse* whatsoever can be a good and useful *Horse*, in any kind, with a Bitt, but what is Wrought in the *Mannage*.

And therefore I advise you, for your Safety, and Use, to Ride all *Horses* in the *Mannage*, and you will find it very True, That there can be

no

of Dressing Horses. 13

no *Horse* else Safe and Useful; nor can any *Horse* go well in a Snaffle, except he be formerly Ridd with a Bitt.

As for Pleasure and State, What Prince or Monarch looks more Princely, or more Enthroned, than Upon a Beautiful *Horse*, with Rich Foot-clothes, or Rich Saddles, and Waving Plumes, making his Entry through Great Cities, to Amaze the People with Pleasure and Delight?

Or, What more Glorious or Manly, than, at great Marriages of Princes, to Run at the Ring, or Tilt, or *Course at the Field*? What can be more Comely or Pleasing, than to see *Horses* go in all their several *Ayres*? and to see so Excellent a Creature, with so much Spirit, and Strength, to be so Obedient to his *Rider*, as if having no Will but His, they had but one Body, and one Mind, like a *Centaur*? But above all, What sets Off a King more, than to be on a Beautiful *Horse* at the Head of his Army?

Thus it is Proved, That there is nothing of more Use than *A Horse of Mannage*; nor any thing of more State, Manliness, or Pleasure, than *Riding*;

14 The New Method

ing; and as it is the Noblest, so it is the Healthfullest Exercise in the World. In Hunting, Hawking, Bowling, Shooting, Cocking, Cardes and Dice, and many such things, there is no Use at all, but meerly Pleasure: But in *A Horse of Man-nage*, both Use and Pleasure. It is True, that if there was nothing Commendable but what is Useful, strictly Examined; we must have nothing but Hollow Trees for our Houses, Figg-leaf-Breeches for our Clothes, Acorns for our Meat, and Water for our Drink; for certainly, most things else are but *Superfluities and Curiosities*.

I find Fault with no mans Delights, and do only Vindicate (with Truth) my own, since I have been so Prest to it with odde Discourses; but I leave every one to his own VVayes, and his own Delights, desiring they will do the like by Me, which I shall take for a great Favour: But if it Chances they will not be so Gracious, and Just to me, it will Grieve me so Extreamply, that, in my Conscience, I shall Sleep never the VVorfe.

That

of Dressing Horses. 15

*That a Good Horse-man may be Thrown-Down
Off his Horse, without Disparagement to Horse-
man-ship, contrary to the Vulgar Errour.*

MOST People are very much Deceiv'd, when, if a *Horse* throws Down his *Rider*, they not only Laugh at Him, but think to have Reason so to do; Saying of the Best *Horse-man* in the VWorld, to whom such a Mischance should happen, That he is a Fine *Horse-man* indeed! For they can Swear, that they knew a *Horse* Threw him. But they must Learn, That a Good *Horse-man* may be Thrown Down sooner than Ill ones; because Good *Horse-men* little think of *Sitting*, and so may be Surprised, their Thoughts being all how to make their *Horses* go Well, and never doubt Throwing; whereas an Ill *Horse-man* thinks of nothing but *Sitting*, for Fear he should be Thrown, and never thinks how to make his *Horse* go Well; for he Knows not how to Do it: But Holds by the Main, and the Pomel, and his Head at the *Horses* Head, ready to Beat out his Teeth,

16 The New Method

and his Leggs holding by the Flank; and is so Deformed on *Horse Back*, as if he were a Strange *African Monster*; and the *Horse* so Disordered, that to see him Sit in that *Manner*, is the most Nauseous Sight that can be, and the most Displeasing to the Beholders; and were much Better for the Spectators to see him Fall, and for his Reputation, so he received no Hurt by the Fall.

Thus you see, That any Groom, or Tinker, may Sit, and yet be no *Horse-man*, which is a Greater Business than only Sitting; for a *Jack-anapes* in *Paris Garden*, when he is Baited with *Muzzled Mastiffs*, the Gentleman Sits very Sure, but not very Comely, and in my Conscience is no Excellent *Horse-man*: Sitting is but One thing in *Horse-manship*, and there are Thousands of things in the Art.

So if a Good *Horse-man* be Thrown by Chance, Hath he Lost all his *Horse-manship*, because he was once Thrown? And is an Ignorant Fellow inspired presently with *Horse-manship*, because he can Ill-favouredly Cling to the Horse, and Hold on? No, sitting Fast is the meanest thing in *Horse-manship*,
ship,

of Dressing Horses. 17

ship, which Comprehends many more of greater Consequence.

But yet I must Tell you, I never knew in my Life, a good *Horse-man* Thrown, but I have known many Presumptuous ignorant Fellows get Falls; but, as, if a good *Horse-man* by Chance be Thrown, he doth not Lose all his *Horse-manship* with that Fall, if he be not Kill'd; so an Ignorant man, if he Sits, is not Presently infused with *Horse-manship*: For it is a Mistake as Ridiculous as it is Common, to take Sitting Fast on Horse-back for the whole Art of *Horse-manship*.

Old Grison, and his Translator Mr. Blundevile,

ANATOMIZED

OLd Grison, and many *Italian* Authors, would have a *Bardel*, which is a *Straw Saddle*, set first on a Colts Back, and nothing but a Rope Cavazon on his Nose; which is to no Purpose in the world, but Loss of Time: Then they will Trot him two or three Years up Hills, and down
F Hills,

Hills, to Stop him; which is to Less Purpose, and more Loss of Time.

They would have a Circle, or Ring, as they call them, of an Acre of ground in Plow'd Land, to make a Horse go a Hundred Turns in it, which is worse than to Ride a Journey of Thirty miles; and I wonder what *Horses* they had in those Days; for I am sure, Those we have now, are not Able to do it.

They Teach to Ride one Horse two or three Hours at a time, when one may well Ride half a Dozen at least in an Hour, and give them sufficiently Enough.

For their Single Turns, and Double Turns, call'd *Radopiare*, they are Ridiculous, and so is the *Repolone*, which is to Gallop him Half a mile, and then Turn him Ill-favouredly and False: And their Several *Mannages* of *Metzo Tempo*, *Tutto Tempo*, and *Contratempo*, are no Better.

For a *Resty Horse* they Raise a whole Town with Staves to Beat him, with many Curious Inventions, with *Squirts*, *Fire*, *Whelps*, *Hedg-boggs*, *Nailes*, and I know not What. And the same they do

of Dressing Horses. 19

do Before a *Horse* that Runs Away, as well as to the *Resty Horse* Behind.

Then for Spurring, the *Bunching Stroke*, and the *Clinching Stroke*; and if he will not Endure the Spurs, *Boots* stufft with *Straw*, and *Spurs* at them, to Hang at his Sides, (which is not worth a *Straw*); and the *Chambetta*, which signifies nothing.

For a Horse that is Afraid, and Starts, they appoint *Whirlegiggs* of several Colours, which will make him Ten times Worse. And to lay Stones in his Way, and a Hollow Ditch to Ride him in, are Lamentable busineses in *Horse-manship*: And they have as many Foolish Wayes for the *Credenza*, which shall never Cure him of that Vice.

They Bid us take Heed, by any Means, Not to make the *Horse* too Weak-Neckt; which is a Prime Note! But Mr. *Blundevile* did not Know, that all Horses are a Stiff-necked Generation.

Mr. *Pagano* would never Use his *Horse* to any thing but a Walk, or a Trot at the most; where-with (I am sure) he shall never Dress a *Horse* perfectly; and yet (sayes Mr. *Blundevile*) it was a

20 The New Method

Wonder to all Beholders, to see, That in Eight Dayes, he would make him Run a *Carreer* perfectly, which I will Undertake to have done the First Morning that ever he Ran.

Speaking of his *Capriole*, he mistakes the *Ayre*, as well as the making of the *Horse*.

For *Corvets*, Mr. *Blundervil* did not Understand it (nor his Master *Grifon* belike) when he sayes, The *Spaniards* take Delight to make their *Horses* go in *Corvets*, which never *Spaniard* yet could do; but he takes *Trampl*ing, and *Prauncing*, for *Corvets*, wherein he is much Deceiv'd; for *Corvets* is the Hardest *Ayre* in the World, which no *Horse* can go, unless he be perfectly within the Hand, and the Heels, and upon the Hanches; which is not *Trampl*ing.

To Ride Short, he calls after the *Turkish* Fashion, wherein he is Deceived; for it is *A La Genette*, which is the *Spanish* Fashion too; and to Ride Short in *Corvets* is his Mistake, for I would Ride Longer in *Corvets* than any other *Ayre*. He is also Mistaken, when he sayes, He would not have above Two *Horses* in Her *Majesties* Stable to go
in

of Dressing Horses. 21

in *Corvets*; for it is of no Use (saith he) and such Delighting Toyes of *Prauncing* up and down they will do, when they should go upon the Ground: For first, There is nothing makes a *Horse* Better upon the Hand, than *Corvets*, and that's Useful; then, there is nothing puts a *Horse* so much upon the Hanches, and Firms him there, as *Corvets*, and that is Usefull too; and Mr. *Blundevill* is mightily Deceived, to think, that he will go in *Corvets*, when he should go upon the Ground; for the Helps are several: And let a Horse be never so Apt, or Perfect in *Corvets*, and made upon the Ground too, (which is the First thing must be done) I dare say he shall never offer at *Corvets* with me, but go just upon the Ground as I would have him; because the Helps are several.

He sayes, That in five or six Months he can make a *Horse* to Gallop the Field, (a Necessary thing for a Souldiers Horse); which is no more, as he Understands it, than in an Acre of Ground to Gallop and *Change*, still upon a Gallop; and that I will Undertake to make a *Cart-Horse* do in three Dayes.

G Besides,

Besides, they Dig out *Rings*, and Entrench themselves (which is a Horrible Folly); but I desire no more for *Stopping* than a Plain place, without Hills, or any such Toyes; and will Dress any Horse perfectly there, by the *New Method* of my *French Book*: which I Refer you to.

For *Mr. Blundevils* Bitts, The are very Ridiculous; the Eyes are Naught, the Cheeks as ill, and the Mouths Worst of all; with Catts Feet, Up-sets, Portes, and Broken Portes; Catts Feet, and Up-sets, with a Revet Nayl; and his Compleat Bitts, are compleatly Abominable, with their Water-Chain and Trench, the Mouth of the Bitt too being as Bigg as my Wrist, and the Branches as Long as my Arm; and the Curb as Bigg as a Chain for a Horse Nose, with ^{some} ~~two~~ Stories flying Trench, which is a Snaffle tyed to the Bitt, and such other Tormenting ignorant Follies: The Leggs ~~are~~ are ~~only~~ so Loose, as if they were Broken, in the Knees, and are to Help up and down, as if they were Wind-Mill-Sayls.

He would have Us to Strike a *Horse* with a Cudgel, or a Rod, between the Ears, and upon the

of Dressing Horses. 23

the Head; which is Abominable, though he thinks it a Rare Secret. And thus much of *Mr. Blundevils* Riding, which is *Grifon* Translated into *English*.

Mr. Blundevils Breeding, To turn the *Stallion* loose to the *Mares*, is indifferent Well, but not Right; and to put him to them again at *Holland-Tide*, stark Naught. To *Cover* in *Hand* is Unnatural, and you shall not have half of them (so *Covered*) prove with *Fole*.

To have a *Horse-Fole*, or *Mare-Fole*, by Tying his Right, or *Left Stone*; to Observe the Moon, and the Wind, to fail to *Procreation*, or get a *Fole* by the *Almanack*, is very Ridiculous; and to put Painted Clothes before the *Mares*, to make the *Foles* of what Colour you would have them, is no less Ridiculous.

That, if the *Horse*, as soon as he hath *Covered*, come Down on the *Right Side*, it is a *Horse Colt*; and if of the *Left Side*, it is a *Filley*: And if, so many Dayes after the *Mare* is *Mounted*, her Coat look Sleek, and Shines, then she hath Conceived; if it do not Shine, she hath not Con-

G 2 ceaved,

24 The New Method

ceaved, are all *Tales* to *Tell* to *Children*, rather than to *Men* of *Reason* and *Discretion*; all *Mountebankship* and *Fooleries*: and to make the *Horse* *Lusty*, and the *Mares*, there is little or nothing in it.

Mr. *Blundevil* Reasons thus: That for as much, as all *Mares* do *Fole Standing*. Wherein certainly he took his Note out of some Learned Author, as *Aristotle*, or the like; for I will Assure you, That never any *Mare* in the World did *Fole Standing*: If she did, the *Fole* would break his Neck; For, he comes into the World with his Head first, and his two Feet on both sides of his Head. No! The *Mare* is in too great Pain to *Fole Standing*, and therefore she Lies Down, and *Foles* so.

Mr. *Blundevil* sayes, There is a thing Growes in the *Foles* Fore-head like a *Figg*, which the *Mare* commonly Bites off, which is called *Hippomenes*; and if it be *Taken*, it doth *Miraculous Things* in *Love-Matters*, which he was Loath to Write of. Truly he was Over-careful, with all his *Old Writers*; and, in my Conscience, if it could be Got, it would
do

of Dressing Horses. 25

do *Miraculous Things*, not only in *Love*, but in every *Thing* else. But the Truth of this Business, is, That never any such thing did Grow upon any *Foles* Fore-head; and therefore could never be Bitt off by the *Mare*. No doubt but that *Mistake* is caused by the *Secondine*, or *Clean*, or *Bagg*, in which the *Fole* Lies, whereof all the Strings meets at the End, which looks like a little Knot, and that hangs Loose upon the *Foles* Head; but when the *Fole* is Foled, That, and the *Bagg*, goes together; for it is all one Thing.

Mr. *Blundevil* bids us take Heed, That the *Mare* do not Eat that *Bagg*, or *Secondine*, Because the Country Wives *Kye* do so. But I have Enquired of the Country-Men, and they say, Not one *Cow* in a Hundred does do it: And for *Mares*, I will assure you, They Never do it: And if you Ask, What they do with it? I say, They let it Lie there, and trouble themselves no more with it.

Mr. *Blundevil* condemns those that Take the *Foles*, to be taken Off at *Martlemas*; Because, according to his old Learned Authors, he would

H . . . have

26 The New Method

have them Suck two Years at least: That is, he would have them Heavy, Flaby *Jades*, besides the Loss of the Fruitfulness of his *Mares*; wherein his old Authors are very much deceived.

Then he sayes, That the *Foles Leggs* are as Long when they are *Foled*, as ever afterward; wherein he is very much Deceived: Does he think, that the *Body* only Grows, and the *Leggs* not at all? A very Ridiculous Opinion! For, look at the *Foles Leggs*, and the *Mares*, and you shall find the *Mares Leggs* are *Longer* a great deal. Can any man think, That a *Gray-Hounds-Whelp*, as soon as he is *Whelped*, hath his *Leggs* as Long as when he is a *Dogg*? It is Ridiculous.

To know, Which *Fole* will have the Best Spirit, by Running fore-most, and Leaping of Hedges and Rayls; is quite contrary to the Experience I had once of a Colt, that Nothing would keep in, Leaping over all things he came near; and when he came to be Ridd, the Dullest Jade that could be.

To know by their *Feet*, and much of *White*, That they are not *Long-Lived*, is as false a Rule, as any He hath set down.

His

of Dressing Horses. 27

His Reckoning *Horses Teeth*, is beyond the Number of what ever any *Horse* had; and that every *Horse* hath two *Tushes* Below; and two Above, is, I assure you, *True*. Some *Horses* (say they) have no *Tushes* at all, and they commonly ill-natured, being something of the *Mare*; but as there is not One in a Hundred but have *Tushes*, so there is not One *Mare* in a Hundred that have Any; and those that have, are ill-natured, participating too much of the *Horse*; and both are a kind of *Hermaphroditical* Compositions. Thus you see, how Learned People (with their old Authors) are Deceived.

To Know the Disposition of Horses, by the Elements, and their Marks.

M^R. *Blundevil* sayes, The *Sorrel* is of the Element of *Fire*, and therefore is full of Mettle, Hot, and Fiery; but I assure you, I have Known more *Sorrel Horses* dull *fades* than of any other Colour.

H 2 That

That *White Horses* are Flegmatick, and so participate of the Element of *Water*, and therefore are Dull and Heavy *Jades*: But I assure you again, I have Known *White Horses* to be fuller of Spirit, and Livelier, than of any other Colour; and so his Elements are Wrong in Every thing: Your best Way is, To Try your *Horse*; which Philosophy will hold to Know him best.

Mr. *Blundevil* speaks also of the *Marks* of *Horses*, That there are *Four* good, and *Seven* bad; such a *Foot* of the *Far Side*, and such a *Foot* of the *Neer Side*, and which *Fore-foot*, and which *Hinder-foot*; and not too much *White* in his *Face*, nor his *Leggs* to be very high *White*; and *Feathers*, and I know not what a kind of Conjurat[i]on: All false and ridiculous Lies.

When once I hear a *Man* talk of *Marks* and *Elements*, I have done with him, and Know no other Philosophy but *Trying*; for, there are Good and Bad of all *Colours*, and of all *Marks*; but there are more *Badd* *Horses* than *Good* of any *Colour* or *Mark*, as there are of any thing Else, even of *Men* in all Things: Therefore *Marks* and *Colours*

of Dressing Horses. 29

lours are foolish and false Toyes, only to abuse simple People withal.

Of the Perfect Shape of a Horse.

M^R. *Blundevil* speaks so of the *Perfect Shape* of a *Horse*, That such a *Horse* as he Describes, was never of *Gods*, and *Natures* Making, but of his *Own*, or of some *Foolish* Authors he hath Read; for he takes several Parts of several *Horses*, and Puts them Together, which is a *Horse* of their *Own* making; for there was never such a *Horse* Foled.

Every Country hath a several *Shape* of *Horses*; As the *Turk*, the *Neapolitan*, the *Spanish* *Horse*, the *Barb*, and the *Dutch* *Horse*; All very Fine in their Kinds.

In a Word, I will shew you the Ridiculousness of Setting down the *Perfect Shape* of a *Horse*. For Example, Who can set down the *Perfect Shape* of a *Dogg*? A *Mastiff* is not a *Grey-Hound*; nor a *Gray-Hound*, a *Lancashire-Hound*; nor a

I Lan-

30 The New Method

Lancashire-Hound a Little *Beagle*; and yet all very Fine *Doggs* in their Kinds: And so of *Horses*: Which shows the Impossibility to let down the *Perfect Shape* of a *Horse*.

Mr. *Blundevil* sayes, a *Spanish* Horse is Pinn-Buttock, narrow and slender Behind: I believe he would have a *Spanish* Horse to have a *Dutch* Horses Buttock; which would indeed be very Correspondent to the Rest of his *Shape*: Some *Spanish* Horses have Oval Buttocks, which is the Finest Buttocks of all.

He sayes they have ill Feet: It is true, some have, and so have Horses of all Countries; *Dutch* the Worst, and some of the *English* very Bad: He sayes also, *Spanish* Horses are Weak; but there are more Weak *Dutch* Horses than *Spanish*.

I have Had many *Spanish* Horses with good Buttocks, good Feet, and Strong; and if some should be Weak, yet their Spirits make them go much Better, than any other *Horses* that are Stronger.

He sayes, They are Gentle in their *Youth*, and grow Vicious in their *Age*: But I assure you,
There

of Dressing Horses. 31

there is no such thing; for they are as Gentle in their *Age*, as they are in their *Youth*, and very Loving Horses: So *Mr. Blundevil* is very much Abused by his old Authors whom he Reverences so much.

He sayes, The *Gennet* hath a Comely going, like the *Turkish*, which is neither *Amble*, nor *Trot*. I would Know of *Mr. Blundevil*, What strange kind of Going that is, which is neither of those Two: But I will assure him, That there is no Horse, that hath Four Legs, can go, but it must be the Action either of an *Amble*, or of a *Trot*; for *Galloping*, and *Running*, is another thing, and so are all *Ayres* in the *Mannage*. *Mr. Blundevil* appears by this, to be a Better Schollar, than a *Horse-man*: and was indeed a fine Gentleman, Well Travelled, an Excellent Schollar, a Good Translator, and puts things into an Excellent Method, but Tyed himself too much to Old Authors, who knew as little as he in *Horse-manship*; and so Authority Abused him, having no Knowledge himself in the Art, and totally wanting Experience in it.

His Treaty for *Dyeting* of Horses, is as

I 2 Learned

32 The New Method

Learned as any Phyſitian can Write; but yet is nothing as it Ought to be; for he wanted Experience.

His Cures of Diſeaſes are moſt Admirable; and indeed, he is the Father of all that Buſineſs, and the Rareſt that hath Writ upon that Subject. *Markham* is but, *Blundevil* with other Names, and will not Acknowledge it: He hath many new Medicines, but they are worth Nothing; as his *Oyle of Oats*. Nor was he a *Horſe-man* at all, but only took Notes of Medicines, and ſet them down *Methodically*.

After him comes *De La Gray*, which is but, *Blundevil*, with ſome New Medicins that are but Indifferent: And for his *Breeding of Horſes*, it is the moſt Ridiculous thing that ever was known Writ.

The Beſt Medicins of *Mr. Blundevils*, are thoſe of *Martine*, who was Prime *Marſhal* to Queen *Elizabeth*; And, as I take it, an *Alman*, and an Excellent *Farrier*: Yet, even he, was extreamly Miſtaken about the *Glaunders*, and *Mourning* of the *Cbine*, as by my Woful Experience in *Horſes*

of Dressing Horses. 33

I know, and will better Inform you, when I set out my Book of *Marshalry*, and *Shooing*.

Mr. *Blundevil* sayes, That *Barley* makes a Horse Piss *Red*, like Bloud; but he did not Understand it perfectly. It is True; In *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, they Feed their Horses all with *Barley*; which is, Because they have no *Oats*: For, certainly Excellent *Oats* is the best Feeding for a Horse in the World. But you must Know, that of *Barley* there are Two kinds; The *Common Barley*, that they make Beer of, which makes a Horse Piss a little *Red*; and of that *Barley* they never Give to their Horses in *Spain*, but of the other *Barley*, which is called by the Name of *Bigg*, and that never makes them Piss *Red*, and is the best Feeding for Horses, where there Wants *Oats*: *Rye* Scoure's too Much, and *Wheat* is too Fatning, and Good *Bread* too Pursey, and Foggy. In *Spain* they give *Barley-Straw*, (as my Lord *Cottington* told me;) but first; they Tread it with Oxen; and then it is as Soft as Silk. And thus for our *English* Authors, of whom I have told you the Truth.

K *The*

The Opinion of a

G R E A T M A S T E R.

A Great Master, held the most Excellent *Horse-man* beyond the *Sea*, being Bred four or five Years under the Best *Horse-man* there, and had Practiced this *Art* from his *Child-Hood*, did me the Honour, To come to *Antwerp* of a Visit to me from *Bruxels*, and Brought with him four or five *Horses*: I Treated him the Best I could, and shewed him my *Horses*, both Led Out, and Rid.

He had a Young Man with him (his *Nephew*) who had Ridd under him for the space of *Seven* Years: And though he had seen Rid, before him, the Day afore, Three of the *Readiest* *Horses* that ever I had; yet when he Ridd them, he could not Encounter them, or make them Go at all; and truly, to my Thinking, (I might say to my Knowledge) he had neither *Hand*, *Heel*, nor *Seat*, as he should have had; and so it was impossible to make them Go Right.

His

of Dressing Horses. 35

His Master told me, He had found a *New Method* for *Dressing of Horses*: Which was; first, Never to *Trot* a Horse, (that was his *Maxim*;) Next, Never to Use the *Caveçon*, nor pull the Horses Head into the *Turn*. This is, What he would Not have Done: And, What he would have Done, is; To put the *Horse* to the *Single Pillar*, with a Long Rope, and there Pinch him with the Spurs, which, sayes he, Puts him upon the Hand: Then to Whip him About with the *Shambriere*, to make him Go half *Terra a Terra*, and half in *Corvets*, and then to make him Go in *Corvets*; which settles him on the *Hand*: And this is the New Way of Dressing; Indeed, of Not Dressing *Horses*.

To take in Pieces, and *Anatomize* this New Way: And first, of what he will Not have Done; which is, Never to *Trot* a Horse, and *Stop* him; which is certainly the *Foundation* of all Things in the *Mannage*, either to settle him on the *Hand*, or to put him on the *Hanches*. Next, Never to Use the *Caveçon*, without which no *Horse* can be Drest, for many Reasons. Then,

36 The New Method

Never to Pull the Horses Head into the *Turn*: By which means the *Horses* Leggs, and Body, shall never go Right, or supple either to *Hand* or *Heel*.

Now, of what he will have done to *Work* his *Horse*: First, To put him to the *Single Pillar*, with a Long Rope, and there *Pinch* him with Spurs; which will do Bravely with a *Colt*, that never knew the Spurs; he will surely Throw him rather than be put upon the *Hand*: Nay, a *Horse* that knows the Spurs, will never be put upon the *Hand* with that *Invention*.

Then to VVhip him about with the *Shambriere*, to make him go half *Terra a Terra*, and half *Corvets*; which is impossible, for they are two several *Actions* with his Leggs: Besides, this excellent Lesson is in *Pluvinel's* Book; which he never used, but to a *Horse* that was *Almost Dreft*; and it is Naught, then: Put him in *Corvets*, to settle him on the Hand, sayes he, which is in *La Broues* Book, only for a *Horse* that is near Dreft, and not for a *Colt*: Besides, some *Horses* will never go in *Corvets*, do what you can: So this
Method

of Dressing Horses. 37

Method may Spoil *Horses*, but shall never Dress them, I assure you; and you may take my Word for it. He will (by his *New Method*) never Trot, Gallop, or Walk a *Horse*; but no *Horse* in the World can be *Made* without *These Three*, nor without a *Carvezon*, *Stopping*, and having his Head Pull'd into the *Turn*.

A strange Conceit of a
G R E A T M A S T E R.

THere was a Great Master, that would Ride his *Horses Twice* a Day; saying, That if he could Dress a *Horse* in *Six Months*, *Once* a day Riding of them, he was sure he could Dress a *Horse* in *Three Months*, Riding them *Twice* a Day; Wherein he is much Deceived: For a *Horse* being Flesh and Blood, cannot indure perpetual *Travel* with little *Rest*; and no Exercise is more Violent for a *Horse* than in the *Mannage*. Nay, of Necessity, Riding so much *One Morning*, he will not Recover it of a Day or Two: And if a
L *Horse*

38 The New Method

Horse Oppose the *Man*, which all *Horses* will do at First, and are Vicious, one must *Correct* him Soundly; and, How will you Ride him in the *Afternoon* again? Dull him you may, and take off his *Spirit*, make him Hate the *Mannage*, and make him like a *Vaulting Horse*, rather than like a *Live Horse*. Nor can you ever Give him his Meat, VVater, or Rest, in *Order*; the Want of which must make him Sick, and subject to many Diseases; and Shortly after, Death will follow: and there is your *Twice* a day Riding him, which *Makes* him fit for the *Hunts-Man* to Drefs him for his *Doggs*.

Some say again, That they will Ride no Horse *Twice* a Day, but Horses that are very *Vicious*, and of great *Strength*: I have seen many Horses that are *Vicious*, but few of such great *Strength*. For, if the *Horse* be very *Vicious*, you must *Correct* him *Soundly*, and Ride him so Long until he Obey you, in some small *Measure*; and then I am sure you have Ridd him so Violently, and so Long, as he will Hardly be to be Ridd the next *Morning*; and Less, to be Ridd any
more

of Dressing Horses. 39

more that Day: And if the Horse be so *Docil* as to *Obe*y you in Every Thing, certainly the Best way is to take but a Little of him that *Morning*, to Encourage him to do so again; and the more to Encourage him, not to Ride him until the next *Morning* again: so he will be Pleasant, Lively, and in Lust, and take Pleasure in you, and the *Mannage*; and Learn more *Thus* in a Months *Riding* him but *Once* a day, than he shall in three Months, *Riding* him *Twice* a day.

Have not all *Schollars* Play-dayes? and certain Hours of Rest in their daies of *Study*? All *Traders-Men*, Holy-dayes to Rejoyce themselves in? *States-Men*, Divertisments from Businets? And Good *Preachers* Preach not every *Sunday*? Have not *Lawyers* also their Terms, and Vacations; and even *Carriers* Horses Rest *Christmas*, and other *Holy-dayes*; and so *Cart-Horses*, *Brewers* Horses, *Coach-Horses*, *Hackney-Horses*, *Running-Horses*? And shall only Horses of *Mannage* be *Galley-Slaves*? There is no Reason for that. No, not *Doggs* can Hunt every day, or *Gray-Hounds* Course every day, or *Spaniels* Range every day; or

L 2 *Hawks*

40 The New Method

Hawks Fly every day; there are hundred Examples of it, but *These* are Sufficient to let you see the great *Folly*, and *Ignorance*, of those that will Ride their Horses of Mannage *Twice* a Day.

Just like the *Polander*, being Sick, whose *Physician* gave him *Nine* Pills to be taken, *Three* every Night, for *Three* Nights together; who very Wisely considered, That if *Three* Pills every Night, for *Three* Nights together, would Recover him; That then, taking *All* the Pills *One* Night, would *Make* him *Well* Presently. And so did, and had *Almost* Purged himself *Out* of this *World*.

So any *Horse-man* that will Venture to *Make* a *Horse* as well in *Three* Months, with *Two* Lessons a Day, as another in *Six* Months with *One* Lesson a Day, may be sure to *Kill* his *Horse*, sooner than *Teach* him, and to shew himself Ridiculous in his Undertaking.

How

of Dressing Horses. 41

How I found Out my
METHOD *in the* MANNAGE;
And that it is
The only WAY to DRESS HORSES.

THere is but *One Truth* in any thing; and that my *Method* is *True*, cannot be better Demonstrated, than by *Experience*, which will clearly show, That *Mine* never misses its *End*, as *All Others* do; and so Proves *Mine True*, and *Theirs False*. For, to say that some of them come *Near the Truth*, is neither *Commendation*, nor *Excuse*: A *Falshood* within an *Inch* of the *Truth*, being as *Bad*, as if it were an *Hundred Miles* off.

I have Practised, and Studied *Horse-manship* ever since I was *Ten* years old; Have Rid with the Best *Masters* of all *Nations*, heard them Discourse at Large, and *Tried* their several *Wayes*: Have Read all their *Italian*, *French*, and *English* Books, and some *Latine* ones; and in a Word, All that hath been *Writ* upon that Subject, Good and Bad; And have Bestowed many *Thousands*

M of

42 The New Method

of Pounds in Horfes, have Spoiled many, and have been very Long learning of this Art of *Horse-manship*.

But all that while I thought still, *All* was *Labour in Vain*; and that there was something, not Found out, which They and their Books *Mist*: Whereupon I began to consider so Seriously, and Study so Earnestly, all the *Particulars* that concern the *Mannage*; that at last I Found this *Method*, which is as *True*, as it is *New*, and is the *quintessence* of *Horse-manship*: For which I have Left all Others, as I had great Reason so to do, *Making* with it all manner of *Horses* whatsoever, of all *Nations*, and of all *Dispositions*; *Strong*, *Weak*; Full of *Fire*, *Dull* and *Lazy*; even *Mares*, *Geldings*, and *Bidets*; and all that ever comes to my Hands.

I follow not the *Horses Disposition*, as most do; but I *Make* the Horse follow my *Wayes*, and *Obe*y me: I seldom Beat them, or Punish them with either *Rod*, or *Spur*, but when I meet with a great *Resistance*, and that *Rarely*: And yet I must tell you, that I use *Force*, which they *Obe*y
wil-

of Dressing Horses. 43

willingly, for the most part; and, however, all Yeeld, and Render themselves at last, with much Satisfaction to me; which I wish others may find in following their Wayes.

But sayes One, Doth your Lordship think, that both your Books would *Make* me a *Horse-man*? I Answer; That they are Written as plainly, and as clearly as Possibly can be: There is in my *French Book*, *Circles*, and the *Prints* of Horses *Shoes*, to shew How his *Leggs* should Go; there is also exact Figures of all *Postures*, and of all *Actions*, both of *Man* and *Horse*, and more cannot be. But whether my Books will *Make* you a *Horse-man* or no, though they do as much as Books can do, I cannot Tell; for you must have it all in your *Head*; and it may be you will not *Understand* it. But put the *Case* you do, yet Wanting the *Practice*, you cannot *Ride Well*; and yet no Fault at all in my Books, but in You.

There are some *Nations* that Think they can see Nothing, but they can do it; which must be by *Inspiration*, by which I never saw any *Ride*,

M 2 though

44 The New Method

though many Pretend to *Preach* by it. It is a Long *Study*, and Diligent *Practice*; a Long *Habit* and *Custom*, which doth *All Things* in the *World*, and *Nothing* done without it: For there is *Cunning* in *Daubing*.

Do you think, that an Ignorant *School-Boy* can be as Learned as a *Doctor*? Or, let a Skilful *Minstrian* Write the Rarest Book in the World, for *Composing*, or *Singing*; Can you Imagine, that as soon as you have Read his *Book*, you can Do what he Teacheth? No truly; and yet not the Book's Fault, but Yours, in being so Partial to your Self, as to think you can do *Any Thing* at the first Sight, without *Practice* or *Study*; which would be a *Miracle* I never saw, or any Body shall ever see.

In the same *Manner*, if a *Lutenist* should Write a Rare *Book*, Can you Expect, that as soon as you have Read it, you can Play on the *Lute*; because, it may be, you can *Jangle* the Strings?

But you say, You can *Ride*: Truly, just as you *Jangle* the *Lute*-Strings, and no otherwise. You
have

of Dressing Horses. 45

have learnt in *Italy* and *France*; that's something indeed: So many Crowns a Month, and the Horse did not Throw you, and that is all.

Mr. *Spenser*, the Best Schollar in all the *Academy* where he Learned, and a fine Gentleman, who had been Two Years there; when he came to Ride one of my *Horses*, he could not make him Go: His *Brother-in-Law* being present, said to me; *My Lord, you must Excuse him, he hath not Ridd a great while.* But Mr. *Spenser* said (with a great Oath) *Brother, you are Deceived; for I know now, I could never Ride.*

God knows how many Young Gallants come newly out of *Academies*; *English, French, Irish,* and *Dutch* Gentlemen, that were Famed for good *Horse-men*, and truly no Piece of a *Horse-man*, and Ridd the Wofullest that could be; and so did before me some *Masters of Academies*: And once two *French-men* Riding (God knows very meanly) were strangely Laught at, and that very Worthily, by two other *French Riders* that stood by.

But sayes One, *I can Ride a Ready Horse;*

N Where-

46 The New Method

wherein he is Deceived; for a *Ready Horse* is the Hardest of all to Ride, because the Least motion is an Absolute Command unto him, and an Ignorant gives him such *Counter-times*, as he puts him quite Out.

Mr. *Germain*, a Fine Gentleman, and the Best Scholler *Du Plessis* had in all his *Academy*, knew well the Difficulty of Riding a *Ready Horse*: For, to Perswade him to Ride one of *Mine*, which he would not Do; I told him, If you will but *Sit Still*, I warrant you the *Horse* will go Well with you. But a *Man* (said he, with a great Oath) cannot *Sit Still*. Which was said Knowingly, and like a *Horse-man*; for, to *Sit Still*, belongs only to a *Great Master*.

Another, because he hath *Ridd* a *Hundred Miles* in a *Day*, (which a *Post-Boy* can do) thinks Himself a *Horse-man*; or, Because he can Run a *Match* with his *Groom*, or Leap a *Ditch*, or a *Hedge*, in *Hunting*, and Hold by the *Main*, he thinks he is a *Horse-man*; but his *Hunts-Boy* doth as much. And my Lord *Mayor* when he goes to *Weigh Butter*, sits a *Legg* of either side the *Horse* very
Gravely;

of Dressing Horses. 47

Gravely; An excellent *Horse-man*! And I have seen many *Wenches* Ride *Astride*, and Gallop, and Run their *Horses*, that could, I think, hardly Ride a *Horse* Well in the *Mannage*.

Are they not, in All *Trades*, bound *Apprentices* Seven and Nine Years; and *Many Bunglers* of them too? And, in Higher *Professions*, Twenty and Thirty Years is not too much, before they are *Great Masters* in any One of them: And though *Horse-manship* be the Hardest of All, yet *Many a Gentleman* will Ride the *First Day* as well as the *Greatest Master*; but he is Deceived, as well as those that think to *Buy*, with their *Money*, any *Quality*: For if *Good Qualities* could be Purchased with *Money*, every *Rich Citizen* would be a *Fine Gentleman*. Of which Opinion that *French Cavalier* was not, who told me, commending my Method; *Par Dieu, Il est bien hardi qui monte devant vous*, that is, He is very Bold, that dares Ride before you. And to the same Purpose, *Signor del Campo*, an *Italian Rider* at *Bruxels*, after he had seen my *Horses*, said; *Il faut tirer la Planche*, that is, The Bridge must be Drawn up; for no

Horſe-man, ſo Good as You, can come After.

There is no Horſe-man but ſhall *Make* my *Horſes* go, for his Uſe, either in a *Single Combat*, or in the *Wars*, better than he ſhall any bodies Horſes elſe; and that's Sufficient: for, to make them go in Perfection in all *Ayres* as I can, were too much, and too great a *Miracle*: But let *My Method* be what it will, ſince every *Man* doth what he can; if any Pleaſes himſelf with his *Own Opinions*, though he Diſlikes *My Way* never ſo much, and ſhould Censure a thing he Underſtands not; and ſay, That the *Mannage* is a Fooliſh thing: It ſhall not Diſpleaſe me at all.

OBSE-



OBSERVATIONS
OF
HORSES.

OF THE
SPANISH HORSE.

YOU must Know, that of All Horses in the World, of what Nation soever they be, *Spanish* Horses are the *Wiseſt*; far the *Wiseſt*, and ſtrangely *Wiſe*, beyond any *Mans* *Imagination*; but I muſt Tell you, they are not the *Eaſier* *Dreſt* for that: Becauſe they Obſerve too much with their *Eyes*, and their *Memories* are too Good, and ſo Conclude with their *Judgments* too ſoon, without the Man, *Reckoning without their Hoſt*; whereas they ſhould *Follow*, and *Obeſy*, his Hand and Heel; and that not by *Roat* neither, but by
O Art,

50 The New Method

Art, which is an Habit got by many *Lessons Methodically Taught*.

If he be *Well Chosen*, I assure you, He is the *Noblest Horse* in the World: First, There is no *Horse* so *Curiously Shaped*, all over from Head to Croup: He is the most *Beautiful* that can be; For he is not so *Thin*, and *Lady-like*, as the *Barb*; nor so *Gross* as the *Neapolitan*; but between Both. He is of great *Spirit*, and of great *Courage*, and *Docil*: Hath the *Proudest Walk*, the *Proudest Trot*, and Best *Action* in his *Trot*; the *Loftiest Gallop*, the *Swiftest Careers*; and is the *Lovingest* and *Gentlest Horse*, and *Fittest* for a KING in a Day of TRIUMPH to Shew himself to his *People*, or in the Head of an *Army*, of any *Horse* in the World.

Therefore no *Horse* so fit to *Breed* on, as a *Spanish Horse*; either for the *Mannage*, the *War*, *Ambling* for the *Pad*; *Hunting*, or for *Running-Horses*: *Conquerour* was of a *Spanish Horse*, *Shotten-Herring* was of a *Spanish Horse*, *Butler* was of a *Spanish Horse*, and *Peacock* was of a *Spanish Mare*: And *These* Beatt all the *Horses* in
their

of Dressing Horses. 51

their *Time*, so much, as *No Horse* ever *Ran* near them.

I say, He is Absolutely the best *Stallion* in the World, for all those several things I have formerly Named, if you do Wisely appropriate such *Mares* to him, as shall be fit for such *Uses* as you would have your *Breed*; and so he is fit for all *Breeds*, but to Breed *Cart-Horses*.

The King of *Spain* hath many *Races*, but his Best is at *Cordona* in *Andaloxia*, where he hath above Three Hundred *Mares* and *Colts*, as my Lord *Cottingham* told me; and, besides those of his Majesty, there are other most Excellent *Races*, not only of *Noblemen*, but also of *Private Gentlemen*.

For the Prices, the Earl of *Claringdon*, now Lord Chancellor of *England*, told Me, That when he was Embassador in *Spain*, Sir *Benjamin Wright*, a Merchant there that Loves *Horses*, sold a Couple of Little *Spanish* Horses for a Great Price: And he sayes, (and many others Confirm it for a great Truth) That Three Hundred, and Four Hundred *Pistols* for a *Horse*, is a common

O 2 Price

Price and Rate, at *Madrid*; And the *Marquess of Aleralvo* told me, That a *Spanish* Horse, called *l Bravo*, sent to the Arch-Duke *Leopold*, his *Master*, was held Worth as much as a *Manner* of a Thousand Crowns a Year, and that he hath known Horses at Seven Hundred, Eight Hundred, and a Thousand *Pistols*.

A Gentleman told me, that he knew a *Cavalier* in *Spain*, who offered another Three Hundred *Pistols*, but to let him Ride his Horse one Afternoon; and the Owner had Reason to *Refuse* it: for it was to go to the *Juego de Toros*, where he might have been *Killed*: many of the Finest Horses in the World being Killed at that Sport, which is the greatest Pity that can be.

You see that a *Spanish* Horse is Dear Ware; and then Reckon his Journey from *Andalozia* to *Bilbo*, or *St. Sebastien*, which is the next Port for *England*, and is Four Hundred Miles at least; and a Horse cannot Travel above Ten Miles a day with your *Groom*, and your *Farrier* at least, besides the Casualty of *Lameness*, *Sickness*, and *Death*; so that if he come Safe to you, yet he will be a very

Dear

of Dressing Horses. 53

Dear Horse, I assure you: And These are great Truths of the Spanish Horse.

Of the BARB.

THE *Barb* is next to the *Spanish* Horse for *Wisdom*, but not neer so *Wise*, and that makes him much Easier to be Drest: Besides, he is of a Gentle Nature, Docil, Nervous, and Leight.

He is as Fine a Horse as can be, but somewhat Slender, and a little Lady-like; and is so Lazy and Negligent in his Walk, as he will Stumble in a Bowling-Green; he Trots like a Cow, and Gallops Low, and no Action in any of those Actions: But commonly he is Sinewy, and Nervous, and hath a clean Strength, is excellently Winded, and good at Length, to Endure great Travel; and very Apt to Learn, and Easie to be Drest, being (for the most part) of a good Disposition, excellent Apprehension, Judgment, and Memory; and when he is Searcht, and Wakened, no Horse in the

P World

World goes Better in the *Mannage*, in all *Ayres* whatsoever, and Rarely upon the *Ground* in all Kinds.

The *Mountain-Barbs*, they say, are the Best; I believe they are the Largest, but, for my part, I rather desire a *Midling* Horse, or a *Less* Horse, which are Cheap enough in *Barbery*, as I have been Informed, both by many Gentlemen, and many Merchants; for they say, that in *Barbery* you may Buy a very Fine *Barb* for Twenty, Twenty Five, or Thirty Pounds at the most; but then your Journey is somewhat Great; not by Sea; for, from *Tunis*, to *Marselles* in *France*, is no great Voyage; but from *Marselles* to *Calais* by Land, you go all the Length of *France*, and at *Calais* they are Shipt for *England*.

You must have an excellent *Esquier*, a *Farrier*, and one *Groom*, and Hire other *Grooms* as you Go; but take heed, That those *Mean Rogues* Run not Away with some of your Horses; and because there is no Trusting of them, your *English* Farrier, and your *English* Groom, must always Lie in the Stable, and none of those Fellows; but

of Dressing Horses. 55

but the Gentleman of your Horse, which ought to be a Good Horse-man, must order that Carefully.

If you would go another Way to work, and a Shorter Voyage, then send into *Languedoc*, and *Provence*, where many Gentlemen Buy *Barbs* of two, three, and four Years old at *Marselles*, and Keep them two or three Years, and then Sell them; which *Barbs* you may Buy for Forty or Fifty Pistols a Piece, and as Fine Horses as can be: But he whom you Send, must be very Skilful to chuse Well, and to take heed that *They* be Right *Barbs*; For I have Heard, that many in those Countries, about *Marselles*, when many *Barbs* come out of *Barbery*, thrust in *Colts* of their own Breed amongst them for *Barbs*, and so Sell them.

When I was at *Paris*, there came Twenty Five *Barbs* (as they said) nothing but Skin and Bones, and they were Sold for Twenty Five Pistols a Horse: My Lord Viscount *Mountague* bought Nine, as I Remember; for I was with him, and helpt to Chuse some for him, and one

56 The New Method

of them did Win *Many Matches*: But truly, if I had had a *Million*, I would not have Bought one of them, for they were very *Ordinary* Horses; Nor do I think they were *Right Barbs*, neither by their *Shape*, nor *Price*, but Bred in some *Islands* there-about; for, if a *Man* be at Great Charges, I would either have an *Extraordinary* Horse, or *None*.

I had lately a Letter from a *Horse-man* at *Paris*, a *French-Man*, that gives me Intelligence of Horses, That a Merchant at *Paris* had two *Barbs*, the Finest that ever he saw, Six Years old a piece, but not *Drest* at all, and held them at Two Hundred Pistols a piece: By which, you may see, that *Right Barbs*, and Fine ones, are very *Dear*, as all Good Things are.

The *Barb* is not so Fit a *Horse* for a *Stallion* for the *Mannage*, as for *Running-Horses*; for he Gets *Long* and *Loose* Horses, therefore do not Breed of him for the *Mannage*, except he be a Short *Horse* from the Head to the Croup, strong *Ramase*, and *Racourfy*, and of a *Superfluity* of Spirit, which few *Barbs* have; and therefore Breed
of

of a *Spanish* Horse, with Choile *English* Mares; and if you have a Delicate well-chosen *Dutch* Mare or two, that makes an excellent Composition for the *Mannage*.

I am of Opinion, and Believe, that there never came out of *Barbery*, The best *Horses* that *Country* affords; not but that they may be had: But the Case is this; Those that bring *Barbs* out of *Barbery*, are either *French* Horse-Courfers that Trade in *Barbery*, or Merchants.

To begin with the *Horse-Courfers*, They alwayes Buy those Horses that are *Cheapest* for their Advantage: For if they Bought of *Great Prices*, it would not quit Cost, and so they Buy the Worst, and Meanest, of *Barbs*: And as for the *Merchants*, They want Skill; Besides, they will Buy the *Cheapest* too, for their Advantage, because they know not Well, how to put off *Horses* of *Price*; and so they Buy but the Worst and Meanest of *Barbs*; which makes me Believe absolutely, that the Best *Barbs* do not come Over: For, did not I see dayly at *Antwerp* the Horse-Courfers of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, that go into

Q *England*

58 The New Method

England every Year to Buy *Horses*, that they bring Over the *Meaneſt* and *Worſt* *Horses* and Geldings that are in the *Kingdom*, and meerly to Buy at *Eaſie Rates*, that they may put them Off with Advantage? For, if they ſhould Buy in *England* *Horses* of One Hundred, One Hundred and Fifty, and Two Hundred Pounds a *Horſe*, which Price hath been Given both at *Malten* and *Pank-
rich* *Fayres*, thoſe Great Prices would not go off there, where *Money* is ſo Scarce; and ſo they would be Undone; and therefore they Buy of Small Prices.

Of The ENGLISH HORSE.

THE *Engliſh* *Horſe* is Leſs Wiſe than the *Barb*, Fearful and Skittish, for the moſt part; and Dogged and Rebellious to the *Mannage*, and not commonly ſo Apt to Learn: But thoſe they call *Engliſh* *Horses*, are ſo Compounded of *Horses* of all Countries, that they always Participate ſome-
thing

of Dressing Horses. 59

thing of their *Sires*; and so, that may somewhat alter the Case.

Certainly *English* Horses are the Best Horses in the whole World for All Uses whatsoever, from the *Cart* to the *Mannage*; and some are as *Beautiful* Horses as can be any where, for they are Bred out of all the Horses of all Nations: But if you would Buy for the *Mannage* at Fairs, you must go to *Rowel* Fair, *Harborow* Fair, and *Melton* Fair, to *Northampton* and *Leicester-shire*; but *Northampton*, they say, is the Best.

You must Buy such Horses as they Sell, for the *Cart* and *Coach*, which are the best for the *Mannage*: Do not think to Buy *Delicate* Shapt Horses, like the *Spanish* Horse, *Barb*, or *Turk*; but they are *Handsomer* Horses than commonly *Dutch* Horses are; Chuse a Short trust Horse, with Good Feet and Leggs, full of Spirit and Action, and Lively; and if he Leap of himself, so much the Better. If your *Horse-man* hath Skill to Buy you such, they cannot do Amis for the *Mannage*, and will prove most *Admirable* Horses, both in all *Ayres*, and upon the *Ground*,

60 The New Method

but I would not *Breed* of them by no Means.

At *Molten Fayr*, for the most part, they are young *Stone-Horses*, and some *Geldings*, but fitter for the *Padd*, and *Hunting*, than for the *Mannage*; *Rippon Fayr* is but the Remnant of *Molten Fayr*, and commonly but *Geldings* and *Naggs*; those *Fayrs* are in *York-shire*; *Lenton Fayr* is in *Nottingham-shire*, and is a great *Fayr* of all *Sorts* of *Horses*; but especially *Geldings* and *Naggs*, fitter for the *Padd*, and *Galloping*, than for the *Mannage*; you may also find some *Stone-Horses* there.

In *Stafford-shire* there is a great *Fayr* at *Pankridge*; but it is, for the most part, of *Colts*, and *Young-Horses*, though sometimes (by *Chance*) there are also *Others*. The other *Fayrs* in the *Northern Parts*, which are many, are not *Worth* naming.

I am very *Ignorant* of the *West Country*, where my Lord *Pauletts* *Ancestors* had a good *Breed* of *Horses*; and by *Chance*, now and then my Lord of *Pembroke* did *Breed*, but I never heard of any *Rare Horses* of his *Race*.

In *Worcester-shire*, and in the *Vale of Eſſam*, there
is

of Dressing Horses. 61

is good Strong *Cart-Horses*; in *Cornwall* there is good *Naggs*, and in *Wales* excellent good Ones; but in *Scotland* the *Gallawayes* are the Best *Naggs* of them all.

There were, afore the Warrs, many good *Races* in *England*, but they are all now Ruined; and the many New Breeders of Horses comn up presently after the Warrs, are (I doubt) none of the Best; for, I believe, their *Stallions* were not very Pure, because the *Men* that did Govern in *Those* *Dayes*, were not so *Curious* as the Great Lords, and Great Gentry were Heretofore, neither would they be at the Cost; and besides, they have not *Knowledge* of Horses as in other *Countries*: For, though Every man Pretends to it, yet, I assure you, there are very Few that Know *Horses*, as I have heard the KING say: Since whose RESTAURATION, the Probability of getting Good Breeds again, is very Great.

For *English Mares*, there are None like them in the World to *Breed On*; but then you must Chuse them fit for such Horses as you would *Breed*; As for Example, If you would *Breed* for

R the

62 The New Method

the *Mannage*, the *Mares* must have Fine *Forebands*, but not too *Long Necks*; *Fine Heads*, and well *Hung On*; and their *Necks* rightly *Turn'd*; *Broad Breasts*, *Good Eyes*; and *Great Bodies*, that the *Foles* may have the more *Room* to Lay ~~down~~ ~~in~~: They must have *Good Hooffs*, short and bending *Pastorns*, and are to be *Short* from the Head to the Croup, and *Stuffy*. This *Shape* fits the *Mannage* Best; and if your *Mares* be thus *Chosen*, it makes no matter what *Colour* they are of, nor what *Marks* they have, nor what *Tayles* and *Manes*, so they be full of *Strength*, and of a superfluity of *Spirit*, and not above Six or Seven *Years Old*. But I must Tell you, That if you had Two or Three fine *Dutch Mares*, *Shaped* as I formerly told you, it *Makes* a fine *Composition* with a *Spanish Horse*, for the *Mannage*; and a *Spanish Horse* with such *English Mares* as I have Told you Now, are not only for the *Mannage*, but in a manner for all *Uses*.

If you would have *Mares* to Breed *Running-Horses* of, then they must be *Shaped* thus; As *Leight* as possible, *Large* and *Long*, but well *Shaped*;

of Dressing Horses. 63

a *Short Back*, but *Long Sides*, and a little *Long-Legged*; their *Breast* as *Narrow* as may be, for so they will *Gallop* the *Leighter* and *Nimbler*, and *Run* the *Faster*; for the *Leighter* and *Thinner* you *Breed* for *Gallopping* is the *Better*. Your *Stallion*, by any means, must be a *Barb*, and somewhat of the *Shape* that I have *Described* the *Mares* to be of: For a *Barb* that is a *Jade*, will Get a better *Running-Horse*, than the *Best Running-Horse* in *England*: As *Sir John Fennick* told me, who had more *Experience* of *Running-Horses* than any *Man* in *England*; for he had more *Rare Running-Horses* than all *England* besides; and the most part of all the *Famous Running-Horses* in *England* that *Ran* one *Against* another, were of his *Race* and *Breed*.

Some *Commend* the *Turk* very much for a *Stallion* to *Breed Running-Horses*; but they are so *Scarce*, and *Rare*, that I can give no *Judgment* of them: And therefore I *Advise* you to the *Barb*, which, I believe, is much the *Better Horse* to *Breed Running-Horses*.

64 The New Method

Of The

F R I S O N.

THe *Frison* is Less Wise than the *English*, but no Horse goes better in the *Mannage*, either upon the *Ground*, *Terra a Terra*, or in all *Ayres*; and no Horse is of more Use, either for a *Single Combat* on Horse Back, or in the *Warrs* for the Shock.

He is Hardy, can Live of any Thing, and will Endure either Heats or Colds; and on no Horse whatsoever doth a *Man* Appear more a *Sword-Man*, than on this *Horse*, being so Quiet, so Bold, and so Assured.

He is also *Manly*, and Fit for Every thing but Running Away; though he will Run fast for a while, yet, I doubt, not Long; because his Wind is not like that of *Barbs*: Yet a Heavy man Well-Armed upon a *Barb*, and the same Weight upon a *Dutch-Horse*, the *Dutch Horse's* Strength is so much Above the *Barb's*, as, Compared thus, I believe the *Dutch Horse* may Run

as

of Dressing Horses. 65

as Fast, and as Long as the *Barb*; for the *Barb's* Wind serveth to no Purpose, when his Strength is not able to Carry his Weight: And thus the *Barb* will want his little *Light Jockey* on him, with a couple of Trenchers for a Saddle, and *Lute-Strings* in his Mouth for a Bitt.

OF THE DANEMARK and HOLLAND HORSE.

THe *Denmark-Horse* is an Excellent Horse, in the same Kind, and commonly Apter to Learn, and Leighter: There are more Leaping-Horses of those *Countries* and *Kinds*, than of any Horses in the World.

But now, to make more Profit, they Geld all in *Holland*, for Coaches, and to keep the Trade, sending Five Thousand every Year into *France*, and diverse other Places, that you can hardly get a *Stone-Horse* worth any thing; their Colts at

S two

66 The New Method

two Years old Springs their *Mares*, and then they Geld them; so, Avarice spoys their *Breed*. A Town will Joyn, and give above Two Hundred Pounds for a *Stallion*; but then he *Covers* all the *Mares* that belong to that Town, like a *Town-Bull*.

OF THE ALMAIN, or GERMAN HORSE.

Those that Write, That they are like *Flanders* Horses, are much Deceived; they mean the common Country *Cart-Horse*: But let me Inform them; there are few Princes in *Germany*, but have Excellent *Races*, and *Breeds* of Horses; and their *Stallions* are alwayes either Courfers of *Naples*, *Spanish* Horses, *Turks* in Abundance, and *Barbs*; and Breeding of these *Stallions*, their *Mares* come to be very Fine, like their *Sires*, and very Pure *Breeds*.

of Dressing Horses. 67

I had one, no *Neapolitan* in the World like him, for Shape, Stature, Colour, Strength, Agility, and Good Nature; He would make Thirty two *Capriols*, the Highest that ever I saw, and the Justest, without any Help in the World; and then upon the *Ground*, to *Gallop* and *Change*, and go *Terra a Terra*, it was another *Action* than ever any other *Horse* did, being in some Manner above the Rate of *Horse-Kind*: This was a *German Horse*, but his *Sire* was a *Courser* of *Naples*.

I had once two Horses of the *Count* of *Oldenburg*'s most Excellent *Breed*, as Fine Horses as ever I saw, and One was the Hopefullest that could be seen. That Prince was Pleased to Present those *Horses* to me, and said, If I Liked them not, he would send me Others; which was like a Prince, and most Generous. The Prince of *West-Friesland* did also Send me a very Fine *Horse*.

68 The New Method

Of The

COURSER of NAPLES.

I Have not seen Many of them; but, *La Brone*, in his Book, says, That the Race was mightily Decayed; and that was almost a Hundred Years ago: And *Pluvinel*, in his Book, says also, That we have not now such *Neapolitans* as we have had; for all the Races are Bastarded, and Spoyled:

The *Arch-Duke Leopold*, when he Governed the Countries of *Flanders*, *Brabant*, &c. sent into *Italy* for Eight or Ten *Courfers* whilst I was at *Antwerp*, which Cost him above Three Hundred Pounds a *Horse*, Journey and all. They were Great vast *Horses*, with Huge Heads, and Thick Necks; Heavy, with no Spirit in the World, nor any Strength; Dull heavy Jades, fitter for a Brewers-Cart than the Saddle: And the *Marquess De Carafene*, a *Spaniard*, that Governs all those Countries, a little Man, but both Witty, and Wise; an Excellent Souldier, both for Conduct and

of Dressing Horses. 69

and Courage, and a Good Horse-Man (which Few *Spaniards* are) and my very Noble Friend, told me, That the last Warrs in *Naples* hath Ruined the King of *Spain's Race* of *Horses* in that Kingdom; but that they Began now to Repair it, and that he Hoped within Fourteen Years it may be Etablissement as formerly it hath been.

Thus you see Things do not Stand at a Stay: for what hath been Formerly, is not so now; as in the *Neapolitan*, and in all the rest of the Races of *Italy*, which are Decayed. The Duke of *Florence* hath the Best Race at this Time in those Parts.

OF THE TURKISH HORSE.

I Have seen very Few of them; but, Two Merchants brought Three *Turkish Horses* to *Antwerp*, very Fine Horses, but Oddly Shaped; their Heads
T were

70 The New Method

were very Fine, but like a Camels Head: They had Excellent Eyes, and Thin Necks, excellently Risen; somewhat great Bodies; the Croup like a Mules; Leggs not Great, but marvellous Sinewy; good Pastorns, and good Hooffs; and their Backs risen somewhat like a Camel.

I had a Groom, a Heavy *Englisb* Clown, whom I set Upon them, and they made no more of him, than if he had been as Leight as a Feather.

They appeared not so Fit for the *Mannage*, as for to *Run a Course*, which, I believe, they would have Scoured; they *Trotted* very Well, and no *Ambling* at all.

The *Horses* about *Constantinople*, Mr. *Blundevil* says, Are very ill-favoured-Jades; but he was mightily Deceived with his Old Authors: For, I have Spoken with many Gentlemen that have been There, as likewise with diverse Merchants that came from Thence; who all Agree, That there are *There*, the most *Beautifull-Horses* in the World; saying, That in *Soyl-Time*, there are many Hundred *Teddered*, and so Shift *Places* when

of Dressing Horses. 71

when they have Eaten that *Bare*: Every *Horse* hath a *Man* to *Look* to him, and every *Man* a little *Tent* to *Lie* in; and they say, That it is one of the most *Glorious Sights* to see those *Horses* that can be; and the most *Beautiful* Horses in the World. And certainly they are Brave *Horses*!

The *Price* of One of these *Horses*, is about a Hundred, or a Hundred and Fifty Pounds a *Horse*; and there is great *Difficulty* to get a *Pass*; for the *Grand Signor* is very *Strict*, in not *Suffering* any of his *Horses* to Go out of his *Territories*.

When that *Difficulty* is Over, there is Another; which is, If you have not a *Turk* or Two, for your *Convoy*, they will be Taken from you by the *Way*: There is also the *Difficulty* of a Long Journey, and the *Danger* of *Sickness*, or *Laming*; For, you must come *Thorow Germany*, which is a Long *Way*; and you must have very *Careful Men* to *Conduct* them, a good *Groom*, an *Expert Farrier*; and by no *Means*, to suffer any to *Shoo* them but Him; for when they per-

72 The New Method

ceive there is a *Fine Horse*, they will Hire a *Farrier* to *Prick* him, or *Spoyl* him, that they may have him: Which is Practiced dayly.

OF THE ARABIAN HORSE.

HE is Nurst with Camels-Milk; there are the strangest Reports in the World of those *Horses*; for I have been Told by many *Gentlemen* of Credit, and by Many-many *Merchants*, That the Price of Right *Arabians* is, One Thousand, Two Thousand, and Three Thousand Pounds a Horse, (an Intollerable, and an Incredible Price) and that the *Arabs* are as Careful, and Diligent, in Keeping the *Genealogies* of their Horses, as any Princes can be in Keeping any of their own *Pedigrees*.

They Keep the *Genealogies* of their Horses with *Medalls*; And when any of their Sons come to be *Men*, then their Fathers give them *Two Sutes*

of

of Dressing Horses. 73

of *Armes* with *Two Cymeters*, and one of these *Horses*, and *Prayes* to God to Bless them; That is every ones *Portion*, and his *Horse Lyes* alwayes in the *Next Room* to him, (I believe, not *Above Staires*). They *Talk*, they will *Ride Fourscore Miles* in a *Day*, and never *Draw* the *Bridle*: When I was *Young*, I could have *Bought* a *Nagg* for *Ten Pound*, that would have done as much *very Easily*.

I never saw any but one of *These Horses*, which *Mr. John Markham*, a *Merchant*, brought Over, and said, He was a *Right Arabian*: He was a *Bay*, but a *Little Horse*, and no *Rarity* for *Shape*; for I have seen *Many English Horses* farr *Finer*. *Mr. Markham* Sold him to *KING JAMES* for *Five Hundred Pounds*; and being *Trained* up for a *Course*, when he came to *Run*, every *Horse Beat* him.

74 The New Method

OF THE HUNGARIAN HORSE.

They are not Worth speaking of; but if you will Believe those of that *Nation*, they will *Magnifie* them *Extreamly*; and so will all *Nations* whatsoever *Mightily* Commend their *Own* Horses: But I have Seen *Hungarian* Horses, and *They* are not worth Commendations, I assure *You*.

OF THE POLANDER HORSE.

When the King of *Poland* Sent an Extraordinary *Embassadour*, with *Many* of his *Nobility* and *Gentry* of *Poland*, to Conduct the *Princess Mary*, Eldest Daughter to the Duke of *Nevers*, from *Paris*, to *Poland* to be his *Queen*, I was then at *Paris*, and Saw his *Entry*; which was one of the most *Glorious*, and *Manly Sights* that
Ever

of Dressing Horses. 75

Ever I saw, after the *Polack* Way, with very Rich Clothes, *Polack* Capps, and great Feathers; and all the *Masters* of *Academies* were Commanded to Wait on the *Embassadour*, with All their Schollars, and Horses, in their Rich Clothes and Saddles, all *A la Mode*, their *Manes* full of *Ribbons*.

I Protest, in Comparison of the *Polacks*, they Lookt like *Hobby-horses*; not but that their Horses were Better; the Difference was meerly in the *Manly Habit* of the *Polanders*, who were also very Rich.

But their *Horses* I do not like at all; for they are, for their Shape, just as the common and ordinary *Horses* and *Geldings* in *England*; and the *Litts* they Use, are just like our *Snaffles*, and have only Rings for the Bridle to be Fastned to, as Ours are, wanting those little Crosses that ours have: But if you will Believe the *Polanders*, they will tell you, That their *Horses* are the *Bravest Horses* in the World, which I have not Faith to Believe: For, when we say, (and it hath been an *Old Saying*) That the *Poland Horse* is the Best

76 The New Method

Horse in the World; we mean the Men to Fight on *Horse-back*, and not the Horses.

OF THE SWEDISH HORSE.

I Had the Honour to Wait on the Queen of Sweden when she was at *Antwerp*, and she used me very Graciously, and Civilly; and an Extraordinary Lady, I assure you, she is in All things: But for the Swedish Horses she had for the Saddle, there was no Great Matter in Them; She had Eight Coach-Horses, large and noble-Shap'r, of the Count of Oldenburg's Breed, which were Beyond any Coursers that ever yet I saw: their Colours *Isabels*, with long *White* Manes, Tails and Toppings; and these she sent into *Spain*, for a Present to the *Catholick* King: And it was a *Kingly* Present, fit for such a *Queen* to Present, and for so Great a *King* to Receive.

OF



O F
W H A T S T A T U R E
A Horse is Best,

EITHER FOR
The WAR, or for a SINGLE-COMBAT,
OR FOR
A N Y T H I N G E L S E.

THere are Great Disputes amongst *Cavaliers* about this Business: I will not trouble you much about their *Arguments*, but only Deliver unto you my *Opinion*. Those that are for *High* and *Large* Horses, say, 'They are *Strong* for the Shock: But they must Know, that all *Large* Horses are not *Strong*; nay, for the most part they are not only the *Weakest* Horses, but commonly of no *Spirit* or *Action*.

Put the Case, a *Great* Horse were *Strong*, yet he is so *Tall*, and his *Strength* *Diffused*, and indeed so out of his *Strength*, that a *Midling* Horse

X (Entre

78 The New Method

(*Entre deux felles*) or rather a *Less* Horse, being Under him, and in his *Strength*, would certainly Overthrow him: So that a *Midling* Horse, or a *Less*, is Best for the *War*, or a *Single-Combat*, without all Doubt.

Midling-Horses, and *Less* Horses have, for the most part, both *Strength*, *Spirit*, and *Agility*, and not one in an Hundred but proves Well; when of *Large* Horses not one in a Thousand does: Nay, the *Midling*, or *Less* Horse, is Best for All Things; for the *Padd*, *Buck-Hunting*, *Hawking-Naggs*, or *Geldings*; for *Hunting-Horses*, Horses for *Winter-Gallopping* on the *High-Way* many *Miles*; for the *Coach*, for the *Cart*, for Any Thing. And if they should Fall, a *Little Horse* would do the *Rider* Less Hurt than a *Greater Horse*, to Lie upon him. *Geldings*, and *Gelt-Naggs*, are fitter for Great Journeys, or *Hunting*, or *Hawking* in Summer, than *Ston'd Horses*; for their Heat, with the Heat of the Weather, soon Heats their Feet, and Founders them; whereas *Geldings* are Colder, and so Travel Better, and not Tire so soon in the Heat of Summer.

THAT

of Dressing Horses. 79

THAT THERE ARE FEW GOOD HORSES.

NOW I must Tell you, That there are *Good* and *Badd* Horses of all *Countries* in the *World*; but there are more *Badd* than *Good*, as there are of *Men*: And though there be *Millions* of *Painters*, yet there was but one *Vandike* in many *Ages*, or, I believe, shall be: The like in *Musick*, in *Horse-manship*, in *Weapons*, and in *Horses*; for a *Rare Horse* in any *Kind*, is a *Difficult* business to find, I assure you: It is a *Hard* thing to find *Fit* Horses for the *Mannage*, either upon the *Ground*, or in *Ayres*. It is true, *Art* doth much, but *Nature* is the *Ground* for *Art* to *Work* on; for, without it, *Art* can do but *Little*.

I dare *Undertake* to *Make* a *Cow* go *Just* in the *Mannage*, but when I have *Done* that, it is but a *Cow*: And so a *Fade* that is *Drest*, he is but a *Fade* when you have done all you *Can*.

80 The New Method

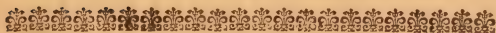
I assure you, it is a very Hard thing to find a Good *Padd-Nagg*, or a Good *Padd-Gelding*, to *Amble* finely upon the *Hanches*, and from his *Amble* to his *Gallop*, or from his *Amble* to his *Trot*, and firm on the Hand: Upon the Bitt I have seen very Few worth any thing, and as few Good *Buck-Hunters*, or *Hawking-Naggs*, or *Winter Hunting-Geldings*, or Horses to *Gallop* or *Run* surely upon All Grounds, *Plowed Lands*, *Moors*, *Parks*, *Forrests*, and every where, with a *Snaffle*, and a *Scotch Saddle*, the Rains slack in his Neck, which makes him very much the Safer for his Rider, because he *Gallops* upon the *Hanches*.

Let me Tell you, That Running-Horses are the most Easily found, and of the least Use; commonly they Run upon *Heaths*, (a Green Carpet) and must there Run all-upon the *Shoulders*, which in *Troublesome Grounds* is ready to Break ones Neck, and of no Use; Though I Love the Sport of a *Running-Horse* very Well, and think I am as Good a *Jockey* as any, and have Ridden many Hundred *Matches*, and Seen the
Best

of Dressing Horses. 81

Best *Jockeys*, and Studied it more than, I think, they have Done.

You see how Difficult a thing it is to Have a Good Horse in any Kind, for Any thing: Therefore I conclude, That a *Knowing Horseman* is not so Happy for Horses, as a *Citizen* of *London*, that knows Nothing, more Than to Buy a Horse in *Smithfield*, for Eight Pound Ten Shillings, or thereabouts, to Carry him to *Nottingham*, or to *Salisbury*; and let him have never so many Faults, his Ignorance finds none: Wherein he is very Happy.



Y MORE





M O R E
O B S E R V A T I O N S
C O N C E R N I N G
H O R S E S.

THe *Turks* are the most *Curious* in Keeping their *Horses* of any *Nation*; and Value them, and Esteem them most: They have all the *Wayes* of Dressing them, and keeping them Clean, that can be Imagined. They Cloath them first with a Fine *Linnen Cloth* and *Hood* next their Skin; then with a *Hair-Cloth* and *Hood*, Lined with Felt, over their *Linnen Cloth* and *Hood*: And all these are made so Fit, as to Cover their Breasts, and to come pretty low down to their Leggs. There cannot be a Better Way than this for their Cloathing.

The *Spaniards* are also very *Curious* about their
Horses

of Dressing Horses. 83

Horses in all things; and their Grooms so Diligent, as they never Stay long Out of the Stable, but are Always doing something about them; and especially are *Curious* about their *Manes*, *Toppings*, and *Tayles*, making them Clean divers Ways; Washing them, and Pleating them. They esteem Highly their *Horses*, and no Nation Loves them Better. The Master is Continually in the Stable, to see the Grooms do their Duty; but, for all that, the *Spaniards* and the *Turks* are none of the Best *Horse-men*; they Ride Short, have Strange *Spurrs*, and *Saddles*, especially *Bitts*, which are most Abominable.

The *Italians* are very Careful and Neat about their *Horses*; but they have of late Lost their *Latine* in *Riding*, or else they never Had it; and our Ignorance made us Think they did Rarely.

Some of the *French* are *Curious* in Keeping and Dressing their *Horses*; but, for the most part, Not: They highly Esteem *Horses*, and will give great
Prices

84 The New Method

Prices for them. But *French* Grooms never Rub a *Horses* Leggs well.

The *Almains*, or *High-Germans*, Love *Horses* well: Some say, They are very *Curious*, but Me-thinks not. They Commend their *Grooms* Extreemly, but I think they do not Delsrve it, Certainly the Best *Grooms* are *Englisb* *Grooms*; but no *Grooms* are Good, Except the *Master* looks strictly after them; for, The *Masters* Eye makes the *Horse* well Dreft, as according to the Proverb, *The Master's Eye makes the Horse Fat*.

Denmark, *Swede*, *Poland*, *Transylvania*, *Hungary*, and all those *Countries*, are much like the *Almains*, for Little *Curiosities*, in Keeping and Dressing their *Horses*; and all their Riding alike: No man in *Germany* will Ride without a *Cavazone*, though he Knows not the Use of it at all, nor what to do with it. In *Flanders*, *Brabant*, and those Parts; as also in *Holland*, and those Parts, they are much like the *Germans*.

The

of Dressing Horses. 85

The Emperour of *Muscovy*, I have Heard, hath a Stable of Horses, and a *French* Rider: He hath some Horses come out of *Tartaria*, and *Turkey*, but none Good in his own *Country*. A *Rider* is of no great Use there, except he could Dress, and make a *Ready Bear*; of which there is Plenty, and they have Noble *Races* of those *Beasts*.

In the *Mogul's* Country there is nothing to Dress, except you would Dress *Elephants*; and the Best Horses they have, come out of *Persia*.

Sir *Walter Rawley* told me, That in the *West-Indies* there were the Finest Shap't Horses, and the Finest Colours in the World, beyond all *Spanish* Horses and *Barbs* that ever he saw; and they knew there so Little the Use of Horses, that they Killed them for their *Skins*.

In *Denmark* there are Excellent good Horses; and in *Norway* little Strong Horses, but not so Purely Shap't. I saw Six *Norway* Horses in a Coach, very little Horses, *Isabells*, with White

Z Manes,

86 The New Method

Manes, and White Tayls; some of their Heads are a little too Bigg; but very Fine little Horses, and Strong.

For *Island* Horses, they are all *Curled* like their *Doggs*, and so *Curled*, that no Curry-Comb can Dress them, nor any thing Else: And they are but *Dull* *Jades*.



WHAT





WHAT
STALLION

Is Best for the
MANNA GE,

The Ordering of him before he

Mounts the Mares,

What *Kind* of Mares, *When*, and *How*, they should
be put *Together* for *GENERATION*.

THe Best *Stallion* in Our *Iland*, is, A Well-
Shapt *Spanish* Horse, with a Superfluity of
Spirit, and Strength, Docil, and of an Excellent
Disposition, and good Nature, which is the Chief
thing in a *Stallion*; for if he be of an ill Dis-
position, Vicious, or Melancholly, all his *Off-
springs* will Participate of it, and will Never be

Z 2 Drest,

88 The New Method

Drest, or made Perfect Horses as they should Be.

He Ought to be of a Good *Colour*, to give the *Race* a good *Dye*; and *Well-Markt*, to Agree with most Mens Opinions: Though *Marks* and *Colours* be Nothing at all to Know the Goodness of a Horse, nor *Shape* neither; but, the Abundance of Spirits, and a Strong *Chine*, be the most Considerable: Yet, by any Means, I would have him Perfectly *Shap't*, for the *Beautifying* of your *Race*; for a *Handsome* Horse may be as Good as an *Ill-favoured* Horse; and an *Ill-favoured* Horse as Good, as a *Handsome* Horse.

I would have you *Feed* him four or five *Months* before he *Covers*, with Good *Oats*, *Pease*, and Hull'd *Beans*, (and *Bread* if you think Good) with Sweet *Hay*, and good *Wheat-Straw*, and some *Barley* now and then for Variety; and *Ride* him out to be *Watered* every day *Twice*, and keep him Out some Little time, only to *Walk* him; but not too Long, for that will *Weaken* him too much.

Why not *Breed* of a *Neapolitan*? They are too
Grofs

of Dressing Horses. 89

Gross Horses; and we *Breed* too *Bigg* Horses in *England*, by reason of the *Moysture* both of *Ayre* and *Ground*.

Why not *Breed* of a *Barb*? They are too *Slender*, and too *Lady-like*, for the *Mannage*, though themselves the *Best* in the *World* for it; but their *Off-spring*, are commonly *Loose* and *Weak Horses*, fitter for *Running-Horses*, than the *Mannage*; so the *Spanish* Horse is in the *Middle*, (where *Vertue* lyes) neither too *Gross*, nor too *Slender*, and the finest *Shap't Horse* in the *World*: And therefore, Have no other *Stallion*.

The fittest *Mares* for the *Mannage*, must be *Short* from the *Head* to the *Croup*; *Curious Forebands*, but not too *Long*; *Fine Heads*, and well *Hung* on; *Good Bodies*, *Short* rather than *Long*; *Short* and good *Leggs*; *Short Pastorns*, and *Bending*; *Good Feet*, short *Backs*, full of *Spirits*, and *Strength*; and good *Natures*.

No where *Better Mares* than in *England*, if they be *Well Chosen*. Yet, I must *Tell* you, I could *Wish* you to have a *Couple* of fine *Shap't little Dutch Mares*, which is a fine *Composi-*

A a tion;

90 The New Method

tion, with a *Spanish* Horse, for the *Mannage*.

For their *Colours*; Let them be such as most Men Like; though I value not that at all.

Their *Age*; five, six, or seven Years Old; and the *Stallion* not to be too Old, except necessity otherwise force you.

The time of the Year; in *May*, about the *Middle* of that *Month*, that the *Foals* may *Fall* in *April*, because else they will have no *Grass*.

Put the *Stallion* to the *Mares*, thus: Take off his *Hinder Shoes*, and bring him Near where the *Mares* are, and there let him *Cover* a *Mare* in *Hand* Twice, which will make him *Wise*; and instantly Pull off his Bridle, and put him to the *Mares*: Which *Mares* must all be put in a Convenient *Closse*, that may *Feed* them *Well* for six *Weeks* at least.

Put those *Mares* that have *Newly Foled*, and those that are *With Fole*, and those that are *Barren*, all to him; for there is no Danger in it. This *Way* is so *Natural*, as they are all Served in their *Height of Pride*; for, the *Horse* never *Mounts* them untill they *Woo* him to it Extreamly.

When

of Dressing Horses. 91

When he hath *Covered* them All, then he Tryes them all Over again, and those that will Take the *Horse*, he *Covers* them; and those that will Not, he lets them Alone: And when he Knows he hath Finished his *Work*, he Beats the *Pale* to be gone, which is Time for him; then you must take him Up, and you shall find him Lean enough, nothing but Skin and Bones, and his Mane and Tayl will *Moot Off*: If you give him too many *Mares*, then he will Serve you the Less time; be so Lean and Weak, that you will very hardly Recover him against the next Year, or *Covering-time*. Therefore ten or twelve *Mares* is Enough.

I had Forgot to Tell you, That you must have a *Little House* with a *Manger*, to Feed him with Corn, and Bread, during the *Covering-time*, to Defend him from the Heat of the Sun, and Rain, which would much Infeeble him: And you must have a *Man* always to Attend him and the *Mares*; and for that Purpose he must have a *Little Hutt* built, to be there Day and Night; not only to Tell you how they are Served, but

A a 2 that

92 The New Method

that no other *Horse* comes to the *Mares*, or other *Mares* put to the *Horse*; and for many other Accidents wherewith he is to Acquaint you. And when you have taken Up the *Stallion*, then Remove the *Mares* into a good and fresh *Pasture*.

This is the True Way for *Covering* the *Mares*; for, Nature is Wiser than Art in the *Art* of *Generation*; and by this Way, I dare say, there shall not, of a Dozen *Mares*, 'Two fail.

I must Tell you, That you must Never have a *Stallion* of your Own Breed, because they are too Far removed from the *Purity*, and *Head*, of the *Fountain*, which is a Pure *Spanish Horse*: Besides, should the *Stallions* be of your Own Breed, in Three or Four *Generations* they would come to be Cart-Horses; so Gross, and ill-Favoured would they be: or at least, just such Horses as are Bred in that *Country*, so soon will they Degrade: Therefore, have still a fresh *Spanish Horse* for the *Stallion*.

But you cannot Breed Better, than to Breed of your Own *Mares* that you have Bred; and let
their

of Dressing Horses. 93

their *Fathers* Cover them; for there is no *Incests* in *Horses*: And thus they are Nearer, by a Degree, to the *Purity*, since a fine *Horse* Got them, and the same fine *Horse* Covers them again.

If any Man will Dispute against this Truth, (if he be not Obstinate in his Errours) let him Read my First Book of *Horse-manship* in *French*, where I Treat of *Breeding*; and there are Reasons that may Convert him, if he considers my Great Experience.

FOR

The *Housing, Feeding, and Ordering* of
COLTS.

YOU must Wean the *Foles*, and Take them from their *Damms*, when Cold Weather comes in, which is about *Martlemas*; and have a Convenient House to Put them in, with a *Low* Rack and Manger fit for them: For the first Year, put the *Horse-Colts*, and *Fillies*, all together;

94 The New Method

ther; and have alwayes good and fresh *Litter* for them, good Sweet *Hay*, and *Wheat-Bran*, and good *Oats*; the *Wheat-Bran* makes them Drink Well, and gives them good Bodies.

In a *Fair Day*, let them now and then go Out in some Inclosed Yard, to *Play*, and *Rejoyce* themselves; and then put them Up again carefully, that they be not Hurt.

The next *Summer*, when *Grass* is Plentiful, put them Out in some *Dry Ground*, where the *Grass* is Short, and Sweet; for if a *Colt* fills his Belly, once in *Twenty Four* Hours, it is Sufficient; and good *Water* they must have. The *Colts* must be by themselves, and the *Fillies* by themselves, Separated.

The next *Winter*, at *Martlemas*, then take Up again the *Colts*, bring them into the *Stable*, and Use them, in all Kinds, like the Older *Horses*; doing the same Thing every *Summer*, and every *Winter*, untill the *Colts* be *Three Years* old, and *Vantage*; and then take them Up for altogether, and Back them. *Tearings* must be Abroad together; so *Two-Years-old* together, and *Three-Years-old*

of Dressing Horses. 95

old together; for thus they will Agree best: as we see that *Little young Boyes*, and *Greater old Boyes*, never Agree, or Play well together.

The *Fillies* you may Better put Together; *Tearings*, and *Two-Years-old*, and *Three*. But I would wish you to take Up the *Filleys* at *Two Years* old, and *Vantage*; then *Back* them, and make them Gentle, and then *Cover* them at *Three Years* old: For, being thus Gentle, they will Never spoyl *Themselves*, nor their *Foles*; and if *They*, or their *Foles*, be *Sick*, or *Hurt*, you may Easily take them Up for the *Farrier* to use his Skill to Recover them.

But, *Why* this *Housing* every *Winter*? You must know, There is nothing induces *Cold* worse than Horse-kind. For Example; Is there any Thing in the World *Looks* so like a *Bear*, and so *Ill-favouredly*, as a *Colt* in *Winter* upon a *Common*, and stands as if he had neither *Life*, nor *Spirit*? and certainly, *Warmth*, and *Dry Feeding*, is the *Quintessence*, and greatest *Secret* in the *World* for *Breeding*. To Prove it; The *Spanish* Horse, that is so *Fine*, is Bred in *Spain*, a *Hot Country*, and

Bb 2 hath

96 The New Method

hath *Dry Feeding*; for there is not much *Grass* in many Places. *Barbery* is very *Hot*, and little *Grass*. *Turkey* is very *Hot*, and *Dry Grounds*. *Naples* is very *Hot*, *Mountainous*, and *Dry*; and in all those *Countries*, the *Horses* are Purely Shap't, with *Heat*, and *Dry Feeding*: Therefore you must Help it, as well as you Can, in *Cold Countries*; which is Done with *Housing*, and *Dry Feeding*. To Prove it, Take the Finest Shap't *Spanish* Horse you can, and let him Cover Two *Mares*, of Equal Beauty; and if they have Two *Horse-Colts*, let One run *Abroad*, until he be Three Years and a Half old, and let the Other be *Housed* every *Winter*; and Fed, as I have Told you. That *Colt* that hath gone *Abroad Three Years* and a Half, shall have a great Flefhy Head, and Thick and Full Neckt; Flefhy Shoulders; Flabby and Gowty Legs; Weak Pastorns, and ill Hooffs; and shall be a Dull, Weak, Flefhy *Jade*, by Reason of the *Humidity* of our *Country*, both Above and Underneath: when the *Colt* that is *Housed* every *Winter*, that is Kept Warm, and Lies Dry, and is Dry Fed, shall have as Fine a Fore-

of Dressing Horses. 97

Forehand, as Sinewy-Leggs, as good Hoofs, Spirit and Strength, and in all things will be as purely Shap't, as any *Spanish* Horse can be.

So you see, That to have the Finest *Stallion*, and the Beautifullest *Mares*, is Nothing, if you do not Order them as I have told you. (See *Dutch* Horses, how *Gross* they are, being *Bred* in *Cold Countries*.) This is a great Secret for *Breeding*, believe me, that have Tryed all Manner of Ways; and according to my great Experience, there is Nothing but This.

FOR THE BACKING OF A COLT.

IF you have used the Method of *Housing* your *Colts* every *Winter*; and, after the First *Winter*, used them in the *Stable*, as you do any other *Horse*; and that they will *Lead*, and be as *quiet* as any *Horse*: You need not Fear their *Plunging*,

Cc and

94 The New Method

and *Leaping*, nor a Hundred *Extravagancies* more; Neither need you *Tyer* him in a *Bogg*, or a *Deep Plow'd-Field*, to take Off his *Spirit*, to break his *Heart*, or at least, his *Wind*, before you dare get Upon him. For, being Ordered as I have formerly Told you, you may *Safely Back Him*, and find him as *Quiet* as a *Lamb*, and never Drive him into *Faint-Sweats*, which will bring many *Diseases* upon him.

You need not then a *Carvezone* of *Cord*, which Mr. *Blundevil* calls a *Head-Strain*; nor a *Padd* of *Straw*; but such a *Saddle* as you ordinarily *Ride* Horses of *Mannage* in, with *Stirrups*; and on his *Nose*, an ordinary *Carvezone*, as you *Ride* other Horses with; but it must be well Lined with double *Leather*, as the Rest are: and if you will, you may put a *Watering-Bitt* in his *Mouth*, without *Rains* on, only the *Headstall*, and this but for a few *Dayes*; and then to put such a *Bitt* as I would always *Ride* him withal, of which we shall *Speak* hereafter, and so give him the *Lessons*, which you shall have Perfectly sett down in the *Second Book*.

But

of Dressing Horses. 95

But if you light on an *Older Colt*, and *Unruly*, then put him to the *Single Pillar*, and Trot him, and Gallop him on both Hands, until he be very Quiet, and will Peaceably suffer you to *Take his Back*; which he will not Fail to do within four or five Dayes at the most, if you Use this *Method*: And I do not know, that the *Single Pillar*, the Old way, is good for any thing, but this. At first you must Ride your *Colt* without *Spurrs*. And thus much for *Backing* of *Colts*.

OF THE SPANISH MULES.

I Have seen the Finest Shap't of them in the World; the Finest Shap't *Heads*, and the Best set On; the Finest *Turned Necks*, and the *Thinnest*, and *Well Risen*; Excellent *Backs*, good *Bodies*; their *Leggs Clean*, and *Sinewy*; Admirable *Hooffs*; their *Croups* a little *Slender*: And

100 The New Method

in a Word, No Horse in the world Finer Shap't, and only their Ears are a Little Long, which, me-thinks, is a Grace to them. They are of all Colours, as Bayes, Dapple-Grays, and so forth. Extremely Strong, as Strong as Two Horses; very Large, some as Large as any Horse whatsoever, and of great Prices; as three, and four Hundred Pistols a Mule. The King of Spain hath Beautifull, and Large ones in his Coach; they Use them very much for the Saddle; for they Amble most Curiously, and Easily; they seldom Stumble, but when they Do, they never Fall further than their Knees.

They are very Safe and Sure to Ride on; there be some very Little ones, and Fine ones, like Gallomayes; and those Commonly great Generals, and Commanders, Ride on in the Trenches, and about Fortified Castles, to View them: The Groffer sort they Use for Sumpters, Waggon, and Carriers for many things. They also Ride Post on them; and Don John de Borge, who was Governour at Antwerp, told me, That they would Amble as fast as Any Horse could Gallop.

They

of Dressing Horses. 101

They Live *Long*, and *Sound*, Thirty Years at least: There are *Males* and *Females* of them, and very *Hot* they are in the *Act* of *Generation*, but never produce any thing, with any thing; either to *Get*, or *Bring Forth*.

They say, One is never assured of them from *Biting* or *Striking* though the *Groom* hath kept them *Twenty Years*; But I perceive no such *Thing* in them: And I have seen a *Mule* go in *Capriols*, excellently well. They say, They have *Ill Mouths*; but that's because they Spoyle them with *Horrible Bitts*: For they use both *Other Bitts*, and other *Saddles* and *Furniture* to them, than to *Horses*; wherein they are very much *Mistaken*. To those that are for the *Saddle*, I would use the very same *Bitts* and *Saddles*, as for *Horses*, and no otherwise. 'Tis true, that for *Sumpters*, there be Proper things that they use for *Them* only, and not for *Horses*, which is very Comely. And in *Spain*, they use in their *Coaches*, *Ropes* for the *Mules* (and the *Horses* also,) to *Draw* the *Coaches* withall. They are Excellent to *Ride* on in *Stoney-Wayes*, none like them; they are so *Sure of Foot*.

D d

The

102 The New Method

The *Stallions* that Get these *Mules*, are *Asses*, upon very Fine *Spanish* Mares.

Sir *Benjamin Wright*, being a Merchant at *Madrid*, Writ to me once, That a *Stallion Ass* would Cost, at the least, Two Hundred and Fifty *Pistols*; but others Tell me of Greater *Prices* that *They* are at: and great *Reason*, since *Mules* are of so great Use to them in *Spain*.

My Lord *Cottingham* told me, That the *Asses* in *Spain*, are Greater and Larger *Beasts*, than ever he saw of *Horses* in all his Life, and almost of Any other *Beast*; and are so Furious, and full of *Spirit*, That there is Men, that Live only by the Ordering of them, and no Other Men can do it, but those men which make a Trade of it; for Others would be Kill'd by them. And These Men Hood the *Asses* when they Cover any Mares, that they may not See them; for otherwise they would Pull the Mares in Pieces, and Kill them. When they Bray, it is a most Lowd and Horrid Noise, beyond any Lyon in the world.

Now you see, There is great Reason, why they should be of Great Prices; but one that Thinks
they

of Dressing Horses. 103

they should be just such *Little* dull *Asses* as are in *England*, of Twenty or Thirty *Sbillings* a Piece, would *Laugh* to hear this *Tale* told; Because they think there is Nothing more in the World than they have seen: As in such a case, Sir *Walter Ramley* said well, *That there are Stranger Things in the World, than between Stains and London.* The *Asses* in *France*, are just like the *Asses* in *England*; Little, Lazy, Dull, and Woful things, and of as Small Price; only in those Parts of *France* that are next *Spain*, there the *Asses* are Large, but nothing in Comparison of those in *Spain*.

The *Shree-Asses* in *Spain*, are very Fair, and Large; For else, How can you Imagine such huge, large, and great *Puissant Beasts* should be Produc'd?

T H A T
T R Y I N G
Is the Only Way to
K N O W H O R S E S .

I Told you, That *Marks, Colours, and Elements*, are Nothing at all to *Know* a Horse by; for they are but *Philosophical Mountebanks* that Talk of such *Toyes*. Nay, *Shape* is nothing to Know the *Goodness* of a Horse; and therefore the best *Philosophy* is, to *Try* him: And you may be Deceived *then*, if he be a Young Horse; for *Colts* alter extreamly, both in *Spirit* and *Strength*. What Judgment can one give of a *Little Boy*, what *Kind of Man* he will *Prove*? No more can one give a Judgement of a *Colt*, what *Kind of Horse* he will *Prove*. But still *Ride* him, and *Try* him; and that is the Best *Philosophy* to Know him by.

Some say, If a *Horse* have a Great *Head*, a Thick *Neck*, and *Fleshy Shoulders*, that he is Hard on the *Hand*: You must Know, That if he

of Dressing Horses. 105

he have any *Imperfection* in his *Leggs* or *Feet*, but especiall *Before*, the *Horse* must be *Hard* on the *Hand*; for he *Leans* on the *Hand*, to *Ease* the *Grief* of his *Leggs*, as a *Gomty-Man* doth Use his *Staff*. And let him be finely-*Shap't*, or ill-*Shap't*, if he have any *Imperfection* in his *Leggs*, he must be *Hard* on the *Hand*; and then the *Farrier* must *Cure* him, and not the *Horse-man*; for the *Art* of *Riding* will not make a *Lame Horse Sound*.

Our *Great Masters*, and *Best Authours*, say, That when a *Horse* is *Sound*, if he have a *Great Head*, *Thick Neck*, and *Fleshy Shoulders*; that then, of *Necessity*, this *Horse* must be *Hard* on ^{the} *Hand*; and give many *Rare Lessons*, as they *Think*, to make him *Leight* on the *Hand*: And they also say, That a *Horse* that hath a fine *Thin Foreband*, must be *Leight on the Hand*, wherein they are *Infinitely Deceived*; for I have *Known* more *Thick Heads*, *Necks*, and *Shoulders*, *Leight* on the *Hand*, than I have *Known* fine *Shap't*, and *Slender Forebands*. But it is neither the *One*, nor the *Other*, that makes it, but meerly the

E c *Strength*

106 The New Method

Strength of his *Chine*. For, if a *Horse*, that hath a *Great Head*, *Thick Neck*, and *Flethy Shoulders*, hath a *Good Chine*, he will be *Leight* on the *Hand*; and if he have a *Weak Chine*, he will be *Hard* on the *Hand*. And so a *Fine Foreband*, if he have a *Weak Chine*, he is *Hard* on the *Hand*; and if he have a *Strong Chine*, he is *Leight* on the *Hand*: So it is, not having a *Gross*, or a *Fine Foreband*, that makes him *Hard* or *Leight*, on the *Hand*; but all Consists in the *Strength* of his *Chine*.

The Reason of that, is, Because if he hath a *Strong Back*, he can Suffer without Grief or Pain, to be put upon the *Hanches*: And no *Horse* is upon the *Hanches*, but he is *Leight* on the *Hand*; and if his *Chine* be *Weak*, the putting him upon the *Hanches*, doth so *Pinch* him, as he Presses upon his *Foreparts* to save the Pain on his *Back*; and sometimes will *Run away*, rather than to Suffer it; and will *Leap*, rather than to be *Pincht* of his *Weak Back*: and yet I must Tell you, The *Strongest* *Horses* are not *Fittest*, or *Properest*, for the *Mannage*, nor for a *Souldiers* *Horse*; for you must

of Dressing Horses. 107

must Gallop him an Hour before you can take him Off his *Fury*; and such *Counter-times* of *Leaps*, do *In-commode* the Rider, to no Purpose: And when you would make him Go, he shall not Go so Well, as a *Horse* of Half his *Strength*: and though he *Leaps* in such a Manner, that will Disorder an *Armed-Man*; yet the Best *Horse-man* in the World shall not make him a *Leaping-Horse*: Therefore the Best for the *Mannage*, and the *War*, is a *Horse* that hath so much *Strength* as to Indure a *Stopp*, and no more, to make him Easie for an *Armed-Man*. And Certainly a *Weak* Horse with *Spirit*, *Docil*, and of a *Good Disposition*, is much Better, and will go Beyond a huge *Flanders* Horse, of a *Dutch* Brewer, that hath no *Spirit*: And I must Tell you, That the Greatest and Largest *Horses* are not commonly the *Strongest*, but for the most part the Contrary; for that which makes them *Draw*, is their *Waight*, and not their *Strength*, nor their *Spirit*; for they have none. I dare say, I can take a little *Engliss* Cart - Horse, that shall Draw *Twice* as much as their Great *Flanders* Horses:

108 The New Method

Commonly those they Use in *Flanders* are *Geldings*.

HOW TO KNOW the AGE OF A HORSE.

M^{R.} *Blundevil* sayes, Some seek to *Know* a *Horses Age* in this Sort: They Pull his *Skin* with their *Hand* from his *Flesh*, holding it so a *Pretty* while together, and then let it *Go Again*, Marking whether the *Skin Returneth immediately* to his *Place*, or not, *without leaving any Signe or Wrinkle where it was Toucht*: And then they Judge the *Horse* to be *Young*. But if the *Skin will not Fall down quickly again* of its *own accord*, they take him to be *Old*, and to lack that *Natural Heat*, and *Warm Blood*, which should *Nourish* his *Outward Parts*. These are the very *Words* of *Mr. Blundevil*.

Let

of Dressing Horses. 109

Let us see the Probability of it, and the Certainty of the Rule, in a Horse whose *Mark is Out of his Mouth*; for many Horses that are many Years Older, if they be Healthful, and Sound, and in good Case, Wanton, and full of Blood, their *Skin will Return to the same Place again Presently*, when a Younger Horse by many Years, that is Sickly, Lean, and Faint, his *Skin will not Return so soon*; and then your *Old Observation* Deceives you, and is a great Folly. And when he will Know a Horses *Age* by his *Tayl*, he begins at the Wrong end; which is most Ridiculous.

Mr. *Blundevil* says also, That when a Horse *Waxeth Old*, his *Temples will wax Hollow*, and the *Hair of his Browes Hore and White*, &c. This is, for the most part, somewhat Probable. But yet I have Known a young Fellow of Seventeen all *Gray*; Why may it not be so in Horses? Nay, I have Known some so. But though I Grant, That *Gray Hairs shewes Age*, for the most part; yet, I believe, you do not know *How Old a Horse is* for all that Observation, but only in general, *That he is Old.*

F f So

So that there is no Sure way to *Know* his *Age*, but by his *Teeth*; and that is a certain Rule, but Lasts no longer than Seven years Old. Captain *Mazine* sayes, That a *Horse's* Years may be *Known* until he is Fourteen, by his *Upper Teeth*; but, because it doth not Hold in all *Horses*, I forbear to Write it. There is some Difference between *Horses* and *Mares*, to *Know* their *Age*.

For any Man that would have a *Horse* of Use in his ordinary Occasions; as for *Journeys*, *Hawking*, or *Hunting*; I would never Buy a *Horse* until the *Mark* be Out of his *Mouth*; and if he be *Sound* of Wind, Limb, and Sight, he will last you Eight or Nine Years with good Keeping, and never Fail you; when a Young *Horse* will have many *Diseases*, as Children have, and you must leave him with your Host at *Harborow*, or *Northampton*, or some *Inne*, and Hire another *Horse* for your Occasion, and have your Host's Bill, and the Farriers, which will come to more than your *Horse* is Worth; and there's your Young *Horse*; but your Old *Horse* shall never Fail you. I am alwayes ready to Buy for such
Pur-

of Drelsing Horses. III

Purposes, an Old Nagg of some *Hunts-Man*, or *Falconer*, that is *Sound*, and that's the Useful Nagg; for he Gallops on all *Grounds*, Leaps over *Ditches*, and *Hedges*; and this will not Fail you in your *Journey*, nor any where; and is the only Nagg of *Use*, for *Pleasure*, or *Journey*, but not for a *Souldiers* Horse, nor the *Man-nage*: For every Horse must be Appropriated in his Kind, and put to what he is Fittest.



WHAT





W H A T
E Q U I P A G E
I S
P R O P E R for the H O R S E,
A N D M O S T
C O M M O D I O U S for the H O R S E - M A N
Afore the Horfe is *MOUNTED*.

FOr the *Saddle*, *Bitt*, *Cavezone*, *Stirrups*, and *Spurrs*, in my first Book of *Horse-manship* you shall see the Figures of all These, most Lively Represented.

For the *Girths*, I must Advise you to have one Girth as *Broad* as two, only at each End separated, as if they were Two, though it is but one Girth; and an *Italian Surcingle* over them; which is so excellent a thing, that if the *Girths*, or *Straps*, should Break, yet the *Surcingle* will not fail to Hold.

You

of Dressing Horses. 113

You must fit your Horse with a Bitt proper for him; that is, a Cannon, or a Scatch, *A la Pignatel*, and Branches *A la Conestable*; and the same Bitt I will always Ride my Horse with I give him at first; for they are Ridiculous with their *Pistol Cannons*, and not to fit a Horse for two Years, and then to Bitt him up. But I will always Bitt and fit my Horse at the first, with what he should always Wear, or such Another when that's Broke, or is worn in Pieces.

Your Horse should be *Girt* as Hard as you can; for the *Italian* sayes, He that *Girds* well, *Rides* well. But a *Groom* may Gird well, and yet not Ride well. But they *Mean*, No Man can Ride well, that doth not Gird well: For, How can he Ride well when the Saddle turns Round? *Horses of Mannage* force the *Girths* much with Violent *Ayres*, which an *Ambling Horse* doth not. But I must Tell you, That you should never *Gird* your Horse up *Hard* and *Straight*, but just before you *Ride* him; for, being *Hard Girt* in the *Stable* Long before you

Gg Ride

114 The New Method

Ride him, I have Known them grow very *Sore*. Why do they not so when they are *Ridd*, say you? He tell you why; Because the Violence of the *Exercise* makes them put Out their *Bodies*, and so Stretches the *Girthes*, and makes them *Easier*.

But I will Tell you a great Truth in *Horses* that are used to be *Girt Hard*: When the *Groom* comes to *Gird* them up, the *Horses* will so *Stretch* their *Bodies* and *Bellies Out*, with holding their *Breath*, that the *Grooms* have much ado to *Gird* them: And this is *Craftily* done of them, that they may have *Ease* after they are *Girded*, and then they let their *Bodies Fall* again. And yet, sayes the Learned, *Like to the Horse that hath no Understanding*.

Another thing I am to Advertise you of; and that is, To make the *Nose-Band* as *Straight* as possible you can; because it *Hinders* him, as they say, to make *Sheeres* with his *Mouth*, or to *Gape* to Disorder the *Working* of the *Bit*, or to *Bite* at the *Rodd* when you help him, or to *Bite* at your *Feet*. But the *Nose-Band*, being very *Straight*,
makes

of Dressing Horses. 115

makes the *Bitt* lie in his due Place, and Works orderly, as it Ought, both upon the *Barrs*, and the *Curb*, and firms and settles his *Head*: And I assure you, there is nothing Better than this, for many things; and therefore I would have also the *Cavezone* as straight as you could, for many Reasons; and Remember that your *Cavezone* be never *Sharp*, but always Lined with double Leather at the least, for fear of Hurting him: Though the Old saying, is, *A Bloody Nose makes a good Mouth*; I would neither Hurt his Mouth, nor his Nose, nor any thing else about him, if I could Help it; and then I am sure he will have a Better Mouth, when his Nose is not Hurt.

Sakers, *Dockes*, or *Trouse ques*, (which is all one) is a great Grace for a *Leaping-Horse*; for it makes him appear *Plumper*, and more Together, *Racourfi*, and makes him appear to go *Higher* too; therefore I would use *Sakers* for all Kinds of *Leaping-Horses*, whether for *Croupa-does*, *Balotadoes*, or *Caprioles*; but then the Horses *Tayles* must be Tied short Up, upon the *Saker*.

Gg 2 For

116 The New Method

For Horses that go the *Mannage de Soldat*, *Terra a Terra*, in *Corvets*, or *Demy-Ayres*, there is nothing Handsomer, than to see a Horse with a good Tayl Down, without any thing; no *Quin-fel*, or any thing, but Naturally; and to see him Lay his Tayl on the Ground, is Graceful, and shewes that he Goes upon the Hanches; which is the Perfection of the *Mannage*.

To Beautifie their *Manes* before great Princes, or Persons of Quality, there is nothing more Graceful, than to Tye their *Manes* with several Coloured Ribbons, or all of One Colour, in many several Wayes; either Pleating their *Manes*, or letting them be Loose.

I never saw any Horse Go so well with *Rich Saddles*, as with *Plain Leather Saddles*, and *Black Bridles*: The *Leather Saddles* should be plain White *Spanish Leather*, sticht with *Silk*; with Silver *Nayles*, and a good Black Leather *Slap-Cover* over it, and the *Bridle* Soft black Leather, and Small; by no means too Great: *Two Girthes* in *One*, to part at both Ends, like *Two Girths*; and a good *Italian Surcingle*, which is
Worth

of Dressing Horses. 117

Worth both the Girthes for sure Holding.

You must be very Careful, to see that nothing that is about the Horse should Hurt him; as his *Saddle, Bitt, Cavexone*, or any thing else: For, I assure you, as long as any thing Hurts him, he will never go Well.

No Horse goes Well in a *Wind*, it doth so Whisk about him, and in his Ears, and makes such a Noise, as it Diverts him from the *Manage*; and so doth any new Help, or any new Thing that they are not Accustomed to: Horses are very Sensible, and Tickle; and no Strangers must come near them.

There is one Thing that is the most Uncomly, and the Disgracefullest thing a Horse can do; and that is, *To Whisk his Tayl* in all the Actions that he makes. The common Remedy they Use, is, *To Tie his Tayl with a Quinsel*; which doth Remedy that Vice, as long as it Holds: But the Best thing in the World, is, *To Cut Cross the great Nerve that is under his Tayl*, and then he shall never Whisk or Shake it again; and it will do him no Hurt in the World, more
H h than

than when it is Cut. There is no Remedy like unto this.

A Very True

P A R A D O X.

I Will never *Put* my *Horfes* of *Mannage* to *Soyl* after they are Five Years old. I had a *Barb* that had a *Cold*, and I was *Perfwaded* to *Put* him to *Soyl*; but when I took him from it, he was *Broken-Winded*. Though I never *Put* them, but Six or Seven dayes, to *Soyl*, yet I ever found them the *Worst* for it, both for *Colds*, and their *Flefh* being *Flabby*. Doth not every Body say, when you *Take* a *Horse* from *Grass*, That you take him *Up* with a *Grass-Cold*? And it is very True. Then these *Horfes* of *Man-nage*, which are extreamly Heated, and often must, of Necessity, *Melt* their *Grease*. If you give them *Grass* to *Cool* them, and *Purge* them (as they say) to bring it away, it being *Hardned* like

of Dressing Horses. 119

like Tallow, *Grass* is too Gentle to do it Effectually: But I Confess it Dissolves some small part of it, which it doth not Bring away; and that which is Dissolved, runs into their Veins, and Arteries, and makes them remain *Sick* Horses, so that they will never *Thrive*. Therefore, at the time of *Soyl*, let them *Blood* once or twice, and give them *Pills* of *Alloes Sicatrina* two *Ounces*, lapped up in *Fresh Butter*; and after that, give them *Cooling Julips* twice or thrice a Week, for a Fortnight, or Three weeks together; and let them Rest, or but Walk gently out, and no *Grass* at all: During the great Heats, ride Moderately, by no means Violently.

Horses of great Exercise must have Dry Feeding; for Moist Feeding spoys them, and fills them full of Diseases and Corruption; therefore never give them *Grass*, and but very little *Hay*. The *Method* thus: Before their *Water*, give them but a Handful of *Hay*, only to make them *Drink*; and after their *Water*, another Handful of *Hay*, to be a *Barricado* between their *Water*, and their *Oats*, that they should not *Shoot* their

H h 2

Oats

120 The New Method

Oats too soon; and then give them their *Oats*; and all the rest of the Day, and Night, nothing but *Wheat Straw*. As the *Italian* sayes, a Horse that is Fed with *Hay*, is a Horse for a *Cart*, he is so *Foggy* and *Purfey*; but they say, *Cavallo de Palla*, *Cavallo de Batalla*; and thus his *Flesh* will be as Hard as a Board, in great Lust, Wind, and Strength, and as *Nervous* as possible can be, and in great Health.

Excellent *Clean Oats* is the Best Feeding in the World; somtimes you may give a few *Pease*, or *Hul'd Beans*, which is very Good; but never any *Bread*, for that makes them *Purfey*, as we know very well by *Running-Horses*. I never give above Two Bushels of *Oats* a Week to every Horse, and it is Enough; for they Look extraordinary Well with it.

A Horse must ever be *Empty* before you Ride him, and stand some three or four Hours, both Morning, and Afternoon, upon the *Watering-Bitt*, to turn him from the Manger, to get him a better *Appetite*; which is excellent Good.

Wheat is Strengthening, but it makes a Horse
Fatt

of Dressing Horses. 121

Fatt at the *Heart*, and Out of *Wind*; *Barley* they give in *Italy* and *Spain*, but it is not our Common *Barley*; but that which we call *Bigg*: which is not an ill Feeding, but not Comparable to good *Oats*: But in *Italy* and *Spain*, they give *Barley*, because they have no *Oats*: *Pease-Straw* will make a Horse *Piss* red like Blood. If you follow this *Method*, you will ever have your Horse Well, and Sound.

I must Tell you, It is not Much *Meat*, but the Ordering of the *Diet*, that *Makes* Horses in *Health*: Nay, to some Great and ^{Hay}Ready Feeders (as they call it) you must give but a little *Wheat-Straw*; for else they will be as *Purse*y and *Fatt*, as *Stall-Fed Oxen*: Nay, some again will Eat their *Litter*, which is very *Foul Feeding*. And then the *Jockeys* use to put their Horses upon the *Muzz*le, which I like not by any Means; for many Horses grow very *Sick* upon it, because it doth almost *Smoother* them; therefore, in that case, I put on a *Carverzone*, and Tie it so Straight, as he cannot Eat, and then he hath his Nostrils clear for *Breath*, and is never *Sick*.

122 The New Method

Be sure, That you never *Dress* your Horse until he be *Cold*; for until then, he will not *Dress*; though I have seen many *Foolish Grooms* offer at it, to *Dispatch* their Work: Nor *Turn* them to the *Manger* to their *Meat*, after their *Exercise*, until they be *Cold*; for, though you give them no *Water*, or but to *Wash* their *Mouths*, yet *Eating*, whilst they are *Hott*, makes *Ill Digestion*.

There is nothing *Conduces* more to the *Health* of Horses, than to *Keep* them three or four Hours before they be *Rid*, on the *Watering-Bitt*; and after they are *Ridd*, so long again on the *Watering-Bitt*, until they be *Cool*; and in the *Afternoon* *Turn'd* again on the *Watering-Bitt* three or four Hours.

For *Worms*, it is good to give them *Brimstone* in their *Oats*, and to put *Bay-Salt* by them, which they will *Lick* apace; and *Fennugreek*, and sometimes a *Spoonful* of *Sweet-Sallet-Oyl* mingled with their *Oats*. But the most *Sovereign Thing* that ever I knew, is *Honey* mingled with their *Oats*.

Horses

of Dressing Horses. 123

Horses of great *Exercise*, that have often great *Heats*, as Horses of *Mannage* have, must be Lett *Blood* often, and have *Dry Feeding*; for, *Moist Feeding*, and *Exercise*, breeds great *Corruption*: *Cooling-Julips*, and *Cooling-Glisters*, (which I will set down hereafter) are very *Needful* to *Preserve* their *Health*.

TO MAKE A HORSE HAVE A FINE COAT.

There are but these Four things, *viz.* *Feeding Well*, *Cloathing Warmly*, *Many Sweats*, and *Dressing Well*.

For *Dressing*, there are these *Things*; The *Curry-Comb*, which only fetches out *Dust*; the *Dusting-Gloath*, that takes away the *Loose Dust*; the *Brush*, that takes the *Dust* from the bottom

124 The New Method

of the *Hair*; the *Hard Wisp*, a little moistned, that takes out *More Dust* yet from him; and the *Felt* a little moistned, that takes out *More Dust* from him afterwards; but the *Wett Hand*, which should be last, takes not only *More Dust*, but a great deal of *Loose Hair*, which is much Better than any of the Former: After this, a *Linnen Cloath* to Wipe them over, and then a *Wollen Cloath*, and so Cloath him Up.

But, the Best of all is the *Knife Heat*, which is the *Scraper*; for, when he is Hot, Scraping of him gets all the *Sweat*, and *Moysture*, out of him, so that he is *Dry* presently after, and all that *Wett* would turn to *Dust*, so there is so much Labour saved: Besides, it gets abundance of *Hair* from him, which the rest doth not; so that it is the most Excellent thing I Know, both to *Cool* a Horse, and to Make him have a *Good Coat*.

You must *Wash* his *Hooffs* first Clean, and then *Dry* them; and when they are *Dry*, then *Anoint* them; and when his *Feet* are *Pick'd*, then *Stopp* them with *Cow-Dung*.

In

of Dressing Horses. 125

In *Summer* he must be *Lightly Cloathed* in the *Heats*, and his *Leggs* and *Feet* all *Wash't*, and his *Codds*, and his *Sheath*, made *Clean*; for there will be a great deal of *Dirt* in those *Places* else; and his *Tard* made *Clean*, and either *Washed* with *Water* or *White-Wine*; his *Temples*, *Eyes*, *Nostrils*, and *Mouth*, Bathed with *Cold Water* in a *Sponge*, which will much *Refresh* him: Nay, to be *Washed* all *Over*, and *Scrap't*, is excellent, both for his *Coat* and *Health*; and sometimes to be *Wash't* with *Sope*: His *Mane* to be *Wash't* and kept *Clean*; and sometimes to be *Wash't* with *Sope* will make it *Grow*; and if the *Hair* should *Fall*, then *Wash* it in *Lee*, but not too *Strong*, for that would *fetch* it *Off*: *Dress* his *Mane* *Clean* every day, and *Pleat* it up again, which will make it *Grow* very much: You must *Wash* his *Tayl* very *Clean*, up to the very *Dock*, *Dock* and all; and often *Wett* his *Dock* with a *Sponge*, not only to make his *Hair* lie *Close*, but to make it *Grow*; and also it doth *Refresh* him very much, and keeps him *Cold* handsomely.

But if your Horse hath a *White Tayl*, wash

Kk it

126 The New Method

it never so clean, yet he will *Dye* it in his *Dung* and *Urine*, that it will be *Yellow*, and therefore you must *Wash* it very *Clean* with *Water* and *Sope*; and when it is *Dry*, put it in a *Bagg*, and *Tie* it up, and that will keep it *Clean*, and *White*.

Clip his *Ears*; and no more of his *Mane*, than for the *Head-stall* to *Lie* there; and *Cut* his *Tayl* a little above his *Fetlock*, and *Cut* it every *Month* to make it *Grow*. You may *Dress* him in as many *Various Sorts* with *Ribbons*, as there are *Colours*, which *Beautifies* him much.

He must be well *Littered* with fresh *Rye-Straw* every *Night*, and to have *Pasterns* on his *Fore-Feet* keeps him from much *Hurt*; but one *Pasterne* on his *Hinder Foot*, tyed to the *Pillar* behind him, with a *Leather Rein* at such a *Length* as he may *Lie Down*, doth *Avoid* more *Mischief* than you can *Imagine*: The *Woollen Cloath* must alwayes be laid upon his *Buttock* under his *Housing Cloath*; You must alwayes have your *Horses* to have *Hoods*, and both they, and their *Housing-Cloathes* Lined with *Cotten*, or *Baies*, to keep them *Warm*.

Have

of Dressing Horses. 127

Have good *Collers*, *Surcingles*, and *Padds*, and a little *Rein* to Tie them up to the *Wall* or *Rack*; and good *Watering-Bitts*, which, as I told you afore, are very *Useful*. And be careful, after a great *Heat*, that you give him no *Water* till Night, except only to Wash his *Mouth*: for it is very *Dangerous*, and may *Spoyl* him Utterly; for, a Horse will be *Cool Without*, when he is not *Within*: and the Worst is but to forbear his *Meat* a little, or to have a *Small Body*, which is much *Better* than to have *No* Horse.

OF SHOOING.

THE old Saying, is, *Before behind, Behind before*. That is; *Before*, the Veins lie *Behind*: For, you see of his *Fore-feet*, there is a great *Space* on both sides, where there is no *Nayls* at the *Heel*: And *Behind, before*; for you see in his *Hinder-feet*, there is a great *Space* between

Kk 2 the

128 The New Method

the *Nayls* at the *Toe*; because the *Veines* lie *Before*, at the *Toe*; and the *Veins* lie *Behind*, at the *Heel*: and this is done for fear of *Pricking* him. So that the Saying, *Before behind, Behind before*, is very True.

You must Fitt the *Shoo* to the *Foot*, and not the *Foot* to the *Shoo*, as they do in *Flanders*, and *Brabant*; and Open his *Heels* as much as you can, *Straight*, and not *Side-ways*; for that will Cutt away all his *Heels* in two or three *Shooings*; and the *Strength* of the *Heels*, is the *Strength* of the *Foot*. You must Cutt the *Thrusb* handsomly too, and Parc his *Foot* as *Hollow* as you can, that the *Shoo* may not *Press* at all upon his *Foot*: The *Shoo* must come Neer to the *Heel*, and sit a little From it, and a little Wider than the *Hooff* on both Sides, to enlarge the *Heel*; and that the *Shoo* may bear his *Weight*, more than his *Foot*.

The *Webb* must be indifferent *Broad*; not too *Thinn*, least it should Beat into his *Foot*; nor so *Thick*, either to Tyre him, or with the *Weight* to Pull out the *Nayls*.

When the *Shoo* is set *On*, there will be much

Hooff

of Dressing Horses. 129

Hooff to be *Cutt* off at the *Toe*; for, it must be very *Thick* at the *Toe*, if you do not *Pare* him but as I have told you; and when you have *Cutt* it Off, then *Smooth* it with a *File*, or *Rape*, and thus your Horse will stand so Firm, as if he had a little *Polonia-Heel*; and his *Foot* so Strong, as not only to go *Boldly* upon *Stones*, but to *Break* them, and never to *Hurt* his *Feet*, or *Feel* them: For, you will easily Imagine, A *Man* can go much *Better* upon *Stones* with *Three-Soal'd-Shoos*, than with *Pumps*. Paring a Horses *Foot* so *Thin* as they Use, is *Pumps*, and makes him Go upon his *Heels*, as *Pumps* doth a *Man*; and my *Way*, as I have told you, is, *Three-Soal'd-Shoos*, and a little *Polonia-Heel*.

The *Nayls* should be Cast in a *Mould*, with Round and Flatt *Heads*, for fear of *Crossing* one *Legg* of another to *Hurt* him. This for the *Fore-Feet*.

The *Hinder-Feet* are to be *Shod* just in the same *Manner* as the *Fore-Feet* was, both for *Opening* the *Heels*, *Cutting* the *Thrush*, and *Cutting* off at the *Toe*, to leave it *Thick*; only the *Hinder*

L1 *Shoos*

130 The New Method

Shoes must be made *Answerable* to the Form of his *Hinder-Feet*: The *Webb* somewhat *Broad*, but the *Nayls* of his *Hinder-Feet* should be ordinary *Nayls*, and the *Heads* a little *Bigger* and *Sharper*, for *Stopping*, to take hold of the *Earth*, lest he might, with *Sliding*, *Incord* himself; the *Nayls* ought to be so, because a Horse of *Mannage* goes on the *Hanches*, which is most of his *Hinder-Feet*; and *Wears* his *Hinder Shoes* twice as Fast as his *Fore Shoes*: And this is the *Right Way* of *Shooing* a Horse of *Mannage*.

A *Travelling* Horse must be *Shod* after the same *Manner*, but a little *Straighter*; for otherwise, in *Ill Ways*, he will *Pull Off* his *Shoes*; the *Webb* must be a little *Narrower*.

A *Hunting-Horse* must also be *Shod* after the same *Way*, but much *Narrower* than the *Travelling-Horse*, even with his *Foot*, and the *Webb* much *Narrower*, or else he will *Indanger* to *Lame* himself, upon *Ill Grounds*, and to *Indanger* you with *Falling*; besides *Pulling Off* his *Shoes*.

A *Running-Horse's Shoes* are so *Narrow* at
the

of Dressing Horses. 131

the *Webb*, and so *Thin*, as they are called *Plates*, rather than *Shoes*; it is not only for Lightness, but that the Fresh *Nayls*, being Newly *Shod*, may take Better hold of the *Earth*, to prevent *Slipping*: For, could the *Nayls* be put in without *Shoes*, as *Even*, and *Regularly*, it would do as *Well*; but that cannot be, and therefore you must have *Plates* for that end, which is the only end of *Plates*.



WHAT





W H A T

Is to be Done, when

T H E

HAIR from the MANE and TAYL

F A L L S A W A Y.

SEarch both *Mane* and *Tayl* well with your Finger, and Anoynt the Place with this *Unguent*. Take Quick-Silver, and Tryed Hoggs Grease; the Quick-Silver being first Mortified with *Fasting-Spittle*: Incorporate them very well Together, till the Hoggs Grease be of a perfect *Asb Colour*, and Anoynt the *Sorrance* therewith, every day; holding a Hott Barr of *Iron* neer, to cause the *Oyntment* to Sink in, and in three or four Dayes thus carefully Dressing him, he will be Well.

This is a very good Receipt, and I have
often

of Dressing Horses. 133

often used it: But I would Advise you, First to *Lett* him *Blood*, a good Quantity, both in the Neck and Tayl.

T O
C A U S E the H A I R
T O
G R O W A G A I N.

TAke the *Dung* of a *Goat*, newly made; ordinary *Honey*, *Allom*, and the *Blood* of a *Hogg*; The *Allom* being first made into *Fine Powder*. Boyl all these Together, and Rubb, and Anoynt the *Places* therewith every day, and it will *Cause* the *Hair* to come *Again* apace. This is special Good.

I use to Preserve my Horses *Manes*, making them very Clean from all Filth and Dust with the *Brush*; then Wash them with a little *Sope*: And having Wash'd out the *Sope*, Pleat them
M m Up

134 The New Method

Up in great Pleats, and Undo them every Day, Pleat them again; and this will make them *Grow* wonderfully: For, their *Manes* being Loose, they are apt to Break, especially when they are Ridd, by Reason of the *Bridle*, *Cavezone* Reins, and *Hand*, that *Rubbs* against them: Therefore, but upon *High Days*, let their *Manes* be alwayes Pleated.

Their *Tayls* should be always kept Clean, and Wash't with *Sope* sometimes, but wash't Clean every day; and when they are Dry, Comb'd out carefully, for fear of Breaking the *Hair*: Let his *Dock* be Watted with a *Spunge* often in a Day, which will both make it *Grow*, and make the *Hair* to lie *Even*; and his *Tayl* Cutt every Month, which will both make it *Grow*, and grow *Thick*. To Observe the time of the *Moon*, is but an old Foppery; but to Lett him *Blood* in the *Tayl*, is very Good.

Now you must Understand, That what you take many times for *Dust* in his *Mane*, are little *Worms*, which Eat the Roots of the *Hair* away: This is easily Known from *Dust*; because, if

the

of Dressing Horses. 135

the *Hair Falls*, you may be very Sure they are *Wormes*.

The *Cure* is thus: Make a prety strong *Lie*, and Wash his *Mane* with it once a Day, and he will be *Cured*; but you must take heed, that the *Lie* be not too *Strong*; for, if it be, *That* alone will *Burn* all the *Hair* of his *Mane* off: So the *Cure* will be *Worse* than the *Disease*.

RARE RECEIPTS, *JULIPS, GLISTERS, and POTIONS,*

For Cooling a

HORSE OVER-HEATED

BY

VIOLENT EXERCISE:

Promised Before.

FOR a Horse that hath a *Cold*, Take Half a Pound of Honey, Half a Pound of Treakle, mix these together: Then take an Ounce of
Mm 2 Cum-

136 The New Method

Cumminseed, beaten into Powder; an Ounce of Liquorish Pouder, an Ounce of Bay-Berries beaten into Pouder, and an Ounce of Anniseeds in Pouder: Then mix all these Powders together, and put so much of them as shall make it Thick as a *Hasty-Pudding*. After the Horse is *Ridden*, give it him with a *Stick* to *Lick Off*; and if he have a Cold, give him of it, both before, and after, he is *Ridden*; for, no Better *Medicine* there is not.

When a Horse is
O V E R - R I D D E N,
T O
C O M F O R T H I M.

TAKE a Pinte of Sweet Milk, and put three Yolks of Eggs beaten into it; then make it Luke-warm, and then put in three Penny-worth of Saffron, and one Penny - worth of Sallet-oyle, which is Two or Three Spoonfulls, and give it
the

of Dressing Horses. 137

the Horse, in a Horn: You may give him near a Quart of Milk. This is an Excellent Drink.

Honey is the most Excellent Thing in the World, both for the *Lungs*, a *Cold*, and to *Open* all *Obstructions*, putting one good Spoonful into his *Oats*, and so to continue this *Medicine* for a pretty time. I have Known it Recover a very *Pursey* Horse.

Horses of *Great Exercise*, or that are *Over-Heated*, and have great *Fire* in their *Bodies*, must be *Lett Blood* often; nay, twice or thrice within a few *Dayes*, one after another; and still *Lett Blood*, untill you see *Good Blood* comes: To *Lett* such a Horse *Blood* in the *Mouth*, and then *Rubb* his *Mouth* with *Salt*, and let him *Eat* his *Blood*, is an Excellent thing: But you must *Purge* him Well, that his *Grease* may come away; for, Horses of *Great Exercise* would else be alwayes *Foundered* in the *Body*, and then they will never *Thrive* until that *Melted Grease* be brought *Away*.

The Best *Purge*, is two Ounces of *Aloes Si-*

Nn *catrina*,

138 The New Method

catrina, Lapt up in Butter, and made into two Pills, and so give it your Horse after he hath Rested awhile; then give him this Following and Refreshing Drink, which is the best *Julip* in the World :

Take *Mel Rosatum*, or Honey of *Roses*.
Conserve of *Damask-Roses*. Conserve of
Burrage. Sirrup of *Violets*. Of each four
Ounces.

Burrage Water. *Endive Water*. *Suckory*
Water. *Bugloss Water*. *Plantine Water*. Of
each Half a *Dutch Pint*, which is near as
much as an *English Quart*.

Then you are to Use both these *Conservees* and
Waters, Thus :

Put all the *Conservees* into a *Morter*, and Beat
them, or POUND them together, and then Mix
them by Little and Little, with the *Waters*, till
they be well Mixt together; and then give them
all

of Dressing Horses. 139

all together in a *Horn*, to the Horse, without Straining: ~~Do not~~ give it *Cold* by any means. ~~Hot~~ Sirrup of *Lemmons* added to it, is very Good: Give it twice or thrice a Week for a Fortnight at least, and let the Horse Rest afterwards.

Feed your Horse all the time of this great Heat within him, with *Wheat-Brann* amongst his *Oats*, and Wash them in a little Beer, if he Likes it. This *Brann* is the Best thing in the World to get-Out his *Belly*, and to Moisten him, because it Dries up all Superfluous Humours which Heat him: In his *Water*, when you Water him, put also *Wheat--Brann* into it, and let him Eat of that *Brann* also. This is most Excellent; and will not only Cool him, and Moisten him, but also Loosen his *Skin*, if he be Apt to be *Hide--Bound*, which all Heat doth.

Lettises are very good to Cool him; *Suckory* Roots, or *Endive* Roots, are all one. To boyl *Suckory* Roots in his *Water* is very Good; and *Purslane*, to give it him now and then to Eat, is

N n 2 also

140 The New Method

also very Good. To Sprinkle his *Hay* with *Water*, and to give him *Radishes* to make him *Piss*, will *Cool* him. And let him have no Violent Exercise, until he be Recovered, but gentle-Walking.

This is the most Excellent thing in the World; beyond all the Printed Books of Receipts.

T O

COOL and *REFRESH* a *HORSE*.

GIve him *Carrots* with his *Oats*, or upon his Watering-Bitt; *Apples* is Excellent, and so *Muskmellons*, or the Skins of them: To Wash his *Oats* in *Small Beer*, is also very Excellent.

A

of Dressing Horses. 141

*A Receipt of the Cooling-Julip; or Diet-Drink;
that Doctor Davison doth give in Feavers*

TAKE *Barley Water* two Pints: Of *Sirrup of Violets* two Ounces: Of *Sirrup of Lemmons* one Ounce: Mix them together, and use this *Water* to Quench their *Thirst*.

*A Julip for Feavers to Bind the Body, if it
be Loose.*

TAKE one Ounce of *Ivory*, and one Ounce of *Harts--Horn*; Raspe them, and put them in three *Paris--Pintes* of *Water*, and let them Boyl together, until the Half be Consumed; then Strain it through a Cloth: And put to this *Liquor*, four Ounces of the best Juice of *Barberies*, and one Ounce and a half of *Sirrup of Pomgrá-nets*. This is to be Used to Cool.

O o

These

142 The New Method

These are Excellent for *Feavers* in Horſes as well as Men: only you muſt give a Third, or a Fourth Part more to Horſes, ſince they have Stronger Bodies; elſe the *Difeaſe* is all one, and the Remedy is all one: And this Method will *Cure* both Man and Horſe; and all other *Wayes* are *Pernicious* to them Both, which is either *Phyſick* that *Purges*, or *Hott-Cordials*; only when he is *Cured*, then a *Purge*, as I ſaid before, to take away the *Dreggs* that Remain; and no more.

A Cooling-Potion which is moſt Excellent.

TAKE a Quart of *Whey*, and four or five Ounces of *Sirrup* of *Violets*, and four or five Ounces of *Caffia*, and a little *Manna*; and this will both *Cool*, and *Purge* Gently, and is a moſt Excellent Remedy for Horſes of Great *Exerciſe*.

To take the very ſame at the other End, will
do

of Dressing Horses. 143

do much Good to Cool the Bowels; and is a very rare, and soveraign Cooling Glister.

All these Cooling things are most Excellent for Horses of Great Exercise, which are Over-Heated, and Surfeited with Riding, so you give them First the Purge of *Aloes*, to bring Away their Grease.

Here Ends the First Part.





THE
SECOND PART.

Of Riding, and Dressing Horses upon the
G R O U N D.



Here is no Man can Make or Dress a Horse Perfectly, that doth not exactly Understand all the Natural Paces, and Actions of a Horses *Leggs*, in every one of them; and all the Actions of his *Leggs*, made by *Art*.

It is a General Rule, That *Art* must never be against *Nature*; but must follow *Nature*, and set Her in *Order*.

Pp OF

146 The New Method

OF THE NATURAL PACES.

F*irst.* Of a Horse upon his *Walk*. The Action of his *Leggs* in that Motion, Is, Two *Leggs* in the *Ayre*, and Two *Leggs* upon the *Ground*, at the same Time moved *Cross*, Fore-Legg and Hinder-Legg *Cross*, which is the true Motion of a Slow *Trott*.

Secondly. In a *Trott*. The Action of his *Leggs*, is, Two *Leggs* in the *Ayre*, and Two *Leggs* upon the *Ground*, at the same Time moved *Cross*; Fore-and Hinder Legg *Cross*; which is the Motion of his *Leggs* a Swifter *Walk*: For, in a *Walk*, and a *Trott*, the motion of the Horse's *Legges* are all One, which his *Leggs* makes *Cross*, Two in the *Ayre Cross*, and Two upon the *Ground Cross*, at the same time; Fore-Legg and Hinder-Legg *Cross*; and every *Remove* Changes his *Leggs Cross*; as those that were in the *Ayre Cross*, are now set *Down*; and those that were upon the *Ground Cross*, are now pull'd up in the *Ayre Cross*. And
this

of Dressing Horses. 147

this is the Just *Motion* of a Horse's *Legges* in a *Trott*.

Thirdly. For an *Amble*, he Removes both his *Leggs* of a Side: As for Example; Take the *Farr-Side*, he removes his *Fore-Legg*, and his *Hinder-Legg*, of the same Side at one time, whilst the other Two *Leggs* of the *Near-Side* stand still; and when those *Leggs* are upon the *Ground* which he first Removed, at the same Time they are upon the *Ground* the other Side; which is, The *Near-Side* removes *Fore-Legg* and *Hinder-Legg* on that Side, and the other *Leggs* of the *Farr-Side* stand still.

Thus an *Amble* Removes both his *Leggs* of a Side, and every Remove *Changes* Sides; Two of a Side in the *Ayre*, and Two upon the *Ground* at the same time. And this is a Perfect *Amble*.

Fourthly. A *Gallop* is another *Motion*: For, in a *Gallop* he may Lead with which *Fore-Legg* you Please; but then the *Hinder-Legg* of the same Side must Follow it, I mean when he *Gallops* Straight Forwards; and then this is a perfect *Gallop*.

P p 2 But

148 The New Method

But to Understand what is Meant by his *Fore-Legg* Leading, and his *Hinder-Legg* on the same side Following; that *Fore-Legg* is thus. As for Example: If the *Farr-Fore-Legg* Lead, by that *Fore-Legg* Leading, is meant, That *Fore-Legg* must be Before the other *Fore-Legg* alwayes, and the *Hinder-Legg* to Follow it on the same Side; which *Hinder-Legg* must alwayes be Before the other *Hinder-Legg*: And this is a True Gallop.

But now to Shew you, that the *Motion* of a Gallop is thus: The Horse *Liffs* Both his *Fore-Leggs* Up at a Time, in that Action that I told you, which is one *Legg* before the other; and as his *Fore-Leggs* are Falling, I say before they Touch the Ground, his *Hinder-Leggs* in that Posture I formerly told you, Follow his *Fore-Leggs*, being once All in the *Ayre* at one Time; for as his *Fore-Leggs* are Falling, his *Hinder-Leggs* Moves at the same Time, and then he is All in the *Ayre*: For, How is it Possible else, that as a Horse is *Running*, he should spring Forward twice his *Length*, were not the *Motion* of a Gallop a Leap froward?

And

of Dressing Horses. 149

And this *Description* is most True both in the *Motion* and *Posture* of a Horses *Leggs*, when he *Gallops*: In a Soft and Slow *Gallop* it is hardly Perceived, though it be True; but in *Running*, where the *Motion* is more Violent, it is easily Perceived: for there it is Plain; you shall see all his *Four Feet* in the *Ayre* at one time, (*Running* being but a Swift *Gallop*;) for the *Motion* and *Posture* of his *Leggs* are all one. But you must Remember, that *Galloping* upon Circles, the Horse always ought to Lead with his *Two Leggs*, within the Turn; *Fore-Legg*, and *Hinder-Legg* within the Turn. And this is a True *Gallop*.

Fifthly. When a Horse Runns, the *Motion* he makes, and the *Action* of his *Leggs*, are all One with a *Gallop*; only a Swifter *Motion*, which you may call a Swift *Gallop*; and a *Gallop* a Slow *Running*: And this is the Truth of the *Motion* of *Running*.

Now I must Tell you of that which every body Speaks of, and no body Tells what it is: For, they say, A Horse may *Gallop* with the wrong *Legg* Before, which is Impossible. For,

Qq if

if the *Hinder-Legg* of the same side Followes, it is a Right Gallop ; so that rather it is the wrong *Legg* Behind. But that which they call the wrong *Legg* Before, is *Thus* a True Gallop, if that *Legg* which Leads Before, is Follow'd by the *Hinder-Legg* of the same Side ; and as the Horse Falls with his two *Fore-Leggs*, his *Hinder-Leggs* Follow them, before his *Fore-Leggs* touch the Ground ; so that at that very time all the Horses Four *Leggs* are in the *Ayre*, and it is a Leap forward. That which they call the Wrong *Legg* Before, is this, When the Horse is upon the *Motion*, in the Swiftnes of a *Gallop*, he Changes his *Leggs* *Cross* ; which is the Action of a *Trott*, two *Leggs* in the *Ayre*, and two upon the *Ground* ; and that is so Contrary to a *Gallop*, and is such a *Cross Motion*, as makes the Horse ready to Fall : and this is one Way of that which they call, The Wrong *Legg* Before.

Another Way is this, That when the Horse is upon the Action of a *Gallop* ; as I told you before, in the Swiftnes of a *Gallop*, where he should keep alwayes Two *Leggs* of a side Forward, he
Changes

of Dressing Horses. 151

Changes Sides every time, *Fore-Legg* and *Hinder-Legg* of a Side; and Changing Sides every time, that is the Action of an *Amble*, which is Two *Leggs* of a Side in the *Ayre*, and Two *Leggs* of the other Side upon the *Ground* at the same Time, and Changing Sides every Time. This Action of an *Amble*, upon the Swiftnefs of a *Gallop*, Differs so much from the Action of a *Gallop*, as it makes the Horse ready to Fall: And these two, the Action of a *Trott*, and the Action of an *Amble*, upon the Swiftnefs of a *Gallop*, is that which their Ignorance calls, 'The Wrong *Legg* Before.

It is True, that though a Horse do *Gallop* Right, which is his *Hinder-Legg* to Follow his *Fore-Legg* on the same Side; yet if he be not Accustomed to that Side, he will *Gallop* neither so Nimbly, nor so Fast, as with that Side he is Accustomed to Lead withal: For, it is Just as a Left-Handed, or a Right-Handed Man; Custom having a very great Power over Man and Beast: Else, when the Horse *Gallops* Forward, never so little a *Gallop*, his *Hinder-Leggs* go beyond the
Print

Print of his *Fore-Leggs*, and that *Legg* that he Leads withal. For Example; If the Inward *Fore-Legg* Lead, the Inward *Hinder-Leg* Follows; so those are Prest, and his Outward *Leggs* at Liberty: So that in the Action he makes, his Outward *Fore-Legg* is set to the *Ground* first, and is at Liberty; that's one Time: And then his Inward *Fore-Legg*, which is Prest, and Leads, makes a Second time; that's Two: And then his Outward *Hinder-Legg*, which is at Liberty, is set Down; that's Three times: And then his Inward *Hinder-Legg*, which is Prest, and Leads, is set Down; and that makes a Fourth time. So that a *Gallop* Forward is 1, 2, 3, and 4. which is the just Action and Time of a *Gallop* Forward, and is a Leap forward. Now upon *Circles*, his *Croup* Out upon a *Gallop*, he must alwayes Lead with his Inward *Leggs* to the *Turn*, and strikes Over but sometimes; not so much, but that the Action of the *Gallop* is all One; which is 1, 2, 3, and 4. and a Leap forward.

OF
A T R O T.

A *Trott* is the Foundation of a *Gallop*: The Reason is, A *Trott* being *Cross*, and a *Gallop* both *Leggs* of a *Side*; When you *Trott* him Fast, beyond the Power of a *Trott*, it forces him when his Inward *Fore-Legg* is Up, to set Down his Outward *Hinder-Legg* so suddenly, as to make his Inward *Hinder-Legg* to Follow his Inward *Fore-Legg*, which is a True *Gallop*. And thus a *Trott* is the Foundation of a *Gallop*.

A *Gallop* is the Foundation of *Terra a Terra*, for the Actions of the Horses *Leggs* are all one; Leading with the *Fore-Legg* within the *Turn*; and Following that *Legg* with his *Hinder-Legg* within the *Turn*; only you Stay him a little more on the Hand in *Terra a Terra*, that he may go in Time.

An *Amble*, being a Shuffling Action, I would have Banish't the *Mannage*; for the Horse Removes both his *Leggs* of a *Side*, and Changes sides every Remove; which is so Contrary to the *Mannage*, as can be: But if you make him to

R r *Gallop*,

154 The New Method

Gallop; whereas upon a *Trott*, you *Trott* him Fast to take his *Gallop*, you must upon the *Amble* Stay him upon the Hand to take his *Gallop*.

A TRUE DESCRIPTION

Of all the
NATURAL & ARTIFICIAL MOTIONS
a Horse can Make.

F*Irst*, for *Terra a Terra*, the Horse always Leads with the *Leggs* within the *Turn*, like a *Gallop*; his two *Fore-Leggs* Up, and as they are Falling, his two *Hinder-Leggs* Follow; and at that time, all his Four *Leggs* are in the *Ayre*; so that it is a Leap forward; the same upon *Demy-Vaults*; for it is all but the Action of *Terra a Terra*. Now when the Horses *Croup* is In, whether upon a little *Gallop*, or *Terra a Terra*, here his *Hinder-Leggs* are always Short of his *Fore-Leggs*

of Dressing Horses. 155

Legs, because his *Croup* is In; but if it be *Le petit Gallop*, his Action is still 1, 2, 3, & 4. because it is a Gallop. But in *Terra a Terra*, the Action is but two, a 1 & 2 *pa: ta:* like a *Corvet*, but only prest Forward: A *Corvet* is a Leap Upward, and Higher; and *Terra a Terra* a Leap Forward, and Lower; and his Inward *Leggs* that Lead more before his Outward *Leggs*, being another Action than a *Corvet*.

Secondly, *Corvets*, a *Demy-Ayre*, a *Groupado*, a *Balatado*, or a *Capriol*, are all but a Leap Upward; for all his Four *Leggs* are in the *Ayre*, as his Fore-parts are Falling. And there are no more ARTIFICIAL MOTIONS than These two; *Terra a Terra*, and these *Ayres* last-mentioned.

156 The New Method

The Ordering of the
CAVEZONE MY WAY,
And the
Operation and Use of it.

TAke one of the *Reins*, which must be Long, and a little Ring at one End, and put the other End into that Ring, and so put it about the *Pommel*, and then put the rest Down by the Fore-Bolster of the *Saddle* under your *Thigh*; and the rest of the *Rein* put through the Ring on the same Side of the *Cavezone*, and so bring it Back again, either to be in your Hand, or Tie it to the *Pommel* Straight; and do the same with the other *Rein* in All things, as I told you with This.

The *Cavezone* is to Stay, to Raise, and to make the Horse Leight; to Teach him to Turn, to Stop, to Firm his *Neck*, to Assure and Adjust his *Head*, and his *Croup*, without Offending his *Mouth*, or the place of the *Curb*; and also to Supple and Help his *Shoulders*, and his *Leggs* and *Feet* Before.

There-

of Dressing Horses. 157

Therefore I would Use it to all Horses whatsoever ; for they will go much Better with the *Bitt* alone, having their *Mouth* preserved, and made so Sensible, as they will be Attentive to all the Motions of the *Hand*: So that there is nothing for the Exercise of the *Mannage* like it, with a Canon *A la Pignatel*, the Branches *A la Conestable*, and the *Cavezone* together: But then the *Cavezone* must be *My Way*, as I Told you ; and that doth so Supple them, and is so Right, as it makes All Horses whatsoever, if you Work them upon their *Trott*, *Gallop*, *Stopping*, and *Going Back*, with *Passenger*, and *Raising* them as you Ought, and according to the Rules of *Art*: For this makes them Subject to the *Sense of Feeling*, which is the Sence we ought to Work on ; to Feel the Hand, and to Feel the Heels, which is All ; and not to the *Sense of the Sight*, which is the *Routin of the Pillars*, or the *Sense of Noise*, which is the *Routin of Hearing*, but only the *Sense of Feeling*, and only of those two Places, which is the *Mouth* and the *Sides*. Seeing is all the *Art* when they Teach Horses *Tricks*, and

Sf *Gambals*,

158 The New Method

Gambals, like *Bankes's* Horse; and though the Ignorant Admire them, yet those Persons shall never Teach a Horse to Go Well in the *Mannage*. There are many Things in the *Sense of Feeling*, which are to be Done with so great *Art*, *Witt*, and *Judgement*, and require so great Experience of the several *Dispositions* of Horses, that it is not every *Mans* Case to be an *Horse-man*, as it is to make a Dogg or a Horse *Dance*: But I am Contented to let the Ignorant Talk, and Think what they will, for I am not Concerned with their Folly.

The *Cavezon's* inward *Rein* tyed short to the *Pommel* My Way, is Excellent to give a Horse an *Apu*, and Settle him upon the Hand, and make him Firm, and his *Head* Steady: So it is Excellent for a Horse that is too Hard on the Hand; for the *Cavezon's Rein* being always within the *Turn* tyed very Straight to the *Pommel*, keeps him from Resting too much on the *Bit*, which makes him Leight, and Firm on the Hand. The Inward *Cavezone's Rein* tied short to the *Pommel*, is Excellent also to Supple a Horse's
Shoulders,

of Dressing Horses. 159

Shoulders, which is the Best thing that can be; for it gives *Apy* where there is none, and where there is too much *Apy*, it takes it away, and Supplies his *Shoulders* extreamly, which is an Excellent thing; it also makes a Horse *Gallop* very Right, with his *Leggs*, as also his *Leggs* very Right for *Terra a Terra*; for it Lengthens his *Leggs* within the *Turn*, and Shortens his *Leggs* without the *Turn*, which is Right as it should be. So it is Good for Working his *Shoulders* in all Kindes, and his *Croup* last, *Legg* and *Rein* of a Side, as also to Work *Legg* and *Rein* Contrary, in all Kinds of several *Lessons*. And this is the Rarity of Tying the inward *Cavezone's Rein* short to the *Pommel*.

The *Cavezone* (My Way) works Powerfully upon the *Nose*, and so hath the greater Pull to give the Horse the greater *Ply* and *Bent*, being the part the Farthest off from your *Hand*. And this *Ply*, or *Bent*, is from his *Nose* to his *Withers*, which is to Bend his *Neck*, and Works too on the *Shoulders*, this is to *Bent* into the *Turn*; it Pulls his *Head* down too, and makes him Look

Sf 2 into

into the *Turn*; his *Head* being pulled Down when he is Prest, puts him more upon the *Hanches*. This is done with the Inward *Rein* of the *Cavezone* pulled Hard, and Straight, and so Tied to the *Pommel*, which keeps it at a Stay, and is Stronger than ones Hand, and hath the same Operation as I told you Before; but when it is Tied to the *Pommel*, it still keeps the Right *Bent* of the Horse, and then I Work upon the *Bitt*, either with the *Reins* Separated with Both my Hands, or else in my Left Hand only when he is thus *Bent*: When I would *Passenger* him, his *Croup* in, Large or Narrow, then I Help with the Outward *Rein* of the *Bridle*; because it is upon the Action of a *Trott*, and that is *Cross*; and therefore must have his *Leggs* Free without the *Turn*, to Lap over his Inward *Leggs*; and when he is thus Tied with the Inward *Cavezones Rein*, if I would have him to go *Le petit Gallop*, his *Croup* In, or *Terra a Terra*, then I Help with the Inward *Rein* of the *Bridle*, my Hand on the Outside of his *Neck*, and my *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, to put him on the Outside of the *Turn*: but *Le petit Gallop* sometimes on the
 Inside,

of Dressing Horses. 161

Inside, because it is a *Gallop*, as the Outward *Rein* puts him on the Inside of the *Turn*; all this is with his *Croup* In. If to *Trott* or *Gallop* *D'une piste*, Large or Narrow *Circles*, the Inward *Cavezone's Rein* still Tyed to the *Pommel*, then I Help with the inward *Rein*, and inward *Legg*, or outward *Rein* to Narrow him Before: If the *Piroite*, with the outward *Rein*; if *Demy-Voltoes* upon *Passadoes*, the outward *Rein*; For all *Leaps*, the outward *Rein*; for *Corvets* and *Demy-Ayres*, the outward *Rein*; for *Corvets Backward*, the outward *Rein*; for *Corvets Forward*, the outward *Rein*; for *Terra a Terra*, in his Length, the inward *Rein*: And so *Passadoes*, the inward *Rein*. So, *Stopping*, and *Going Back*, the inward *Rein*. All these with the Inward *Rein* of the *Cavezone* Tyed straight to the *Pommel*, which is the Best thing in the World, and then Help with the several *Reins* of the *Bridle*, as Occasion offers you, and as I have Told you for all these several things. So that the Inward *Cavezone's Rein* Tyed to the *Pommel*, or else in your *Hand*, is, For *All* things whatsoever; *Croup*, In or Out; *Trott*, *Gallop*, *Passager*; all *Ayres*, *Stop-*
T t ping,

162 The New Method

ping, Going Back, Passadoes; or any thing in the World that is in the *Mannage*: For without it no Horse can be Perfectly Drest, in any Kind, to have the *Ply* of his *Neck*, and to *Supple* his *Shoulders*, to *Look* into the *Turn*, to have his *Leggs* go *Right*, as they Ought to do in all *Actions*; his Body rightly *Bent*, to be part of the *Circle* he goes in, and *Bent* that *Way*. So it is All in All for every *Thing*, every *Ayre*, and every *Action* the Horse can make.

The *Cavezone* being upon the *Nose*, preserves the Horse's *Mouth*, and *Barrs*, and place of the *Curb*; and it is so Effectual, as it will Drest a Horse without the *Bitt*, which the *Bitt* shall never Do without the *Cavezone*; for the *Barrs* and the *Curb* are too Tender: Besides, the Reins of the *Bitt* can never give him the *Ply*, nor *Bend* him Enough, nor *Supple* his *Shoulders*, because it is so Near you, and Works upon the *Barrs* and the *Curb*; which cannot *Bend* him possibly so, as that upon his *Nose*, because the Branches of the *Bitt* are so Slow, and the *Barrs* and the *Curb* so Low, that there is not Room enough to Pull as with a *Cavezone*, that is so much Higher; and hath so
much

of Dressing Horses. 163

much Room to Pull, and pulls and *Plyes* him, all from his *Nose* to his *Shoulders*, when the other can do little more than Pull his *Musle*, and his *Head*, and goes no further : The *Cavezone's Rein* within is for every Thing, the *Bitt* otherwise.

To Supply his *Shoulders*, you must Help with the Outward *Rein*, and to Stay his Outward *Shoulder* with the Inward *Rein*; which hath not near the Force the *Cavezone's Rein* hath for every Thing : Therefore Use it in All things, and with all *Horses*, *Colts*, Half-Drest *Horses*, Ready *Horses*, Young, Middle-Age, Old, and every *Horse*, and all *Horses*; for there is no *Dressing Horses* Without it, and with it you will *Dress* all *Horses* whatsoever, and of what Disposition soever; Weak, Middle-Strength, or Strong, and Reduce all Vices with it; and when you Use the *Bitt*, they will go much the Better, for having been wrought Continually with the *Cavezone*.

164 The New Method

*Observations about the Cavezone, about the Ply, or
Bending the Horse's Shoulders into the Turn;*

*And in What Place the Cheeks of the Bitt then
Are, or Where they Rest.*

WHen the Inward Rein of the *Cavezone* is Tyed Hard to the *Pommel*, and you Pull the Inward Rein of the *Bridle*, his *Neck* Bends so much into the *Turn*, whether upon Large Circles, his *Croup* Out, or his *Croup* In, as then the *Cheek* of the *Bitt*, that is next the *Turn*, is Beyond the Inside of his *Neck* or *Shoulder*, and the Outward *Cheek*, removed according to the distance of the *Cheeks*, which is much more than the midst of his *Neck*: and this *Ply* Supples his *Neck* and *Shoulders* Extreemly, makes him Look into the *Turn*; Head, Body, Leggs, and all going most Justly, as they Ought to Do, whether his *Croup* In, or Out. And this is the Quintessence of the *Manage*; and without this no Horse can be Drest Perfectly, or can Go Justly in any Kind, either
upon

of Dressing Horses. 165

upon the *Ground*, or in *Ayres*; nor possibly do any thing Right upon the *Circles*, or *Voltoes* without it.

I Told you this was, with the *Cavezone*, the inward *Rein* Tyed so short to the *Pommel*, as Pulls in his *Head* and *Neck* so much, that it makes the inward *Cheek* of the *Bitt* very much within his *Neck*, on the Inside of the *Turn*; because the *Cavezone* Works on his *Nose*, and not on his *Barrs*, or *Curb*, at all; and that's the Reason the Inward *Cheek* of the *Bitt* comes so much beyond his *Neck* on the Inside of the *Turn*.

OF THE OPERATION

OF THE CAVEZONE.

THE *Cavezone* is another Business than the *Bitt*; for the *Bitt* Works upon the *Barrs*, and the *Curb*, and hath two *Cheeks* where-
Uu unto

166 The New Method

unto the *Reins* are Fastned on both Sides the *Horses Neck*; and the *Bitt* is in his *Mouth*, and the *Curb* is under his *Chin*; and these Low, especially the *Branches*: But the *Cavezone* is upon his *Nose*, which is much Higher, and Works only there, without *Mouth* or *Curb*. Well then, the *Cavezone* being Tyed according to My Fashion, though it be to the *Girths*, if you Pull it Cross his *Neck*, with an *Oblique Line*, your *Hand* on the Outside of the *Turn*, your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, it Pulls his *Head* Up a little, and Works the same Effect, for the *Bending* his *Neck*, as the *Bitt* doth, but much more; because you have a greater Pull, the *Cavezone* being upon his *Nose*; and, being further off you than the *Bitt*, he is *Bent* the more; because you have more power to Pull.

Consider, that when the Inward *Rein* of the *Cavezone* is Tyed to the *Pommel*, it is the same *Oblique Line* that the other was, when you had it in your *Hand*, only a little Shorter, and hath the same Operation in every Thing, and pulls up his *Head* a little; but now, if you have it in your *Hand*,
and

of Dressing Horses. 167

and hold it on the Inside of the *Turn*, and pull it Hard, and Low, then you pull Down the Horses *Head*, and he brings in his Outward *Shoulder*, which is good in Large *Circles*, either upon *Trotting*, or *Galloping*, or upon *Passager*, for the Reasons I Told you before; so that the *Cavezone*, and the *Bitt*, Differ so much in their Operative Working, that when you Pull the *Cavezone* a little High, it puts Up the Horses *Head*; and when you Pull the *Bitt* High, and Hard, it Pulls Down his *Head*; and when you hold the *Cavezone* Low, and on the Inside of the *Turn*, and pull it Hard, it Pulls Down the Horses *Head*; and if you hold your *Hand* Low with the *Bridle*, it gives his *Head* Liberty, for the Reasons aforesaid.

Now you see, that the *Cavezone*, and the *Bitt*, Differ in their Working very much; so great is the Difference betwixt the *Nose* and the *Mouth*. It is True, that the Inward *Cavezone's Rein* tyed to the *Pommel*, is so Rare a Thing, and so Effectual, as you may almost Work as you List, with the *Bridle*; the *Cavezone* still doing the Bu-

U u 2 fines;

168 The New Method

finess; and when one comes to Work with the *Bridle* alone, one may Easily be Deceived; except he hath all those Considerations, the Excellency of the *Cavezone*, thus Tied, may Deceive him, when he comes to Work with the *Bitt* alone.

There are Three several Helps with the Inward *Cavezone's Rein* in your *Hand*: The first Help, is, To pull In his outward *Shoulder*; the second Help, with it, is, To pull in his inward *Shoulder*; and the third Help, with it, is, To Stay his *Shoulders*.

Curious and True Observations about the Working of the Bitt Alone, which being not Truly Considered, no Man can Work with the Bitt as he Ought to do.

BUt to Work only with the *Reins* of the *Bridle*, which Work upon the *Bitt*, is another Business; for now I consider what the *Bitt* is,
which

of Dressing Horses. 169

which is another Engine, that Works upon the Horses *Barrs*, and the *Curb*; and the two *Branches* are like *Leavers* to Work on those two Places: as the *Reins* pull the *Cheeks*, either the inward Cheek, or the outward Cheek; The *Barrs*, and the place of the *Curb*, is much Lower than his *Nose*, on which the *Cavezone* Works; and the *Rings* where the *Reins* of the *Bridle* are Fastned, at the Ends of the *Cheeks*, are much Lower than the *Barrs*, or the *Curb*; but as the *Cheeks* are pull'd by the *Reins* of the *Bridle*, so doth the *Bitt* Work upon the *Barrs*, or the *Curb*, accordingly.

As for Example; On the *Right Hand*, the *Reins* separated in both your *Hands*, if you pull the inward *Rein* from his *Neck* on the inside, then you pull the Inward *Cheek* into the *Turn*, and then the Mouth of the *Bitt* goes Out, and Presses the Horse on his *Barrs*, without the *Turn*; and makes the Horse Look Out of the *Turn*, and Presses the *Curb* on the Outside, and must of Necessity do so; for when the *Cheeks* are pulled In, the Mouth of the *Bitt* must go out: For of

Xx what

what Side soever the *Cheeks* are pulled, the Mouth of the *Bitt* goes still contrary to the *Cheeks*, and must do so in all Reason; the *Bitt* being an Instrument that is Made so to do, and it cannot be Otherwise.

The same Operation it hath for the *Left Hand*: if you pull the Inward *Rein* from his *Neck*, the Mouth goes still Contrary to the *Cheek*; the *Cheek* goes Inward, and the *Mouth* goes Outward, and the *Horses Leggs* are Prest on the Inside of the *Turn*; therefore in *Terra a Terra*, the *Reins* Separated in both my *Hands*, I pull the Inward *Rein* beyond his *Neck*, my *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, which pulls the Inward *Cheek* to me, and then the Mouth goes Contrary; that is, The *Cheek* is pull from the *Turn*, and the *Mouth* bends into the *Turn*, and the Horse Looks into the *Turn* as he should do, and the *Horses Leggs* prest on the Outside of the *Turn*, on the *Left Hand*: The Inward *Rein* pull'd thus, hath the same Operation; your *Hand* being on the Outside of his *Neck*, and your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, pulls the Inward *Cheek* from the *Turn*, and the
Mouth

of Dressing Horses. 171

Mouth of the *Bitt* goes into the *Turn*, alwayes Contrary, and cannot be Otherwise; it Presses the Horse on the Inside of the *Barrs*, and on the Inside of the *Curb*, and so Looks into the *Turn*; and his *Leggs* are Prest on the Outside of the *Turn*, which is Proper for *Terra a Terra*. And thus Working with the *Bitt*, Produces many Excellent things, for *Terra a Terra*, as I have particularly set down afore.

OF THE

Working with the Outward Rein of the Bridle.

NOW let us Consider the Working with the Outward Rein of the *Bridle*, What Operation that hath on the *Barrs*, *Curb*, and *Cheeks*; Which *Cheeks* Governs *Barrs* and *Curb*: As for Example; Going on the *Right Hand*, I turn my *Hand* on the Inside of his *Neck*, this pulls the Outward Rein; pulling the Outward Rein, pulls the Outward *Cheek* to me; then of Necessity it

X x 2 must

172 The New Method

must put the *Mouth* of the *Bitt* From me, and Presses the Horse on the Outside of the *Barrs*, which is on the Outside of the *Turn*, and so presses him on the Out-side of the *Curb*, and so the Horse must Look on the Outside of the *Turn*; and all this is, Because the *Cheeks* are pull'd to you on the Outside; therefore the *Mouth* of the *Bitt* must go From you; still Contrary, and never Fails, nor Cannot: For, it is impossible it should work Otherwise; but it is True, That it Supples, and brings in his *Shoulders*. The Reason is this, The Horses *Leggs* are Prest on the Inside of the *Turn*, and then he must needs bring in his *Shoulders*, though he is Prest to Look Out of the *Turn*. The same Thing is for the *Left Hand*, and the same Reasons for every Thing, working with the Outward *Rein* of the *Bridle*. Thus the *Bitt* and *Reins* are truly Anatomized, which never was before: The Outward *Rein* doth Well for the *Piroite*, and so for *Demy-Voltoes* upon *Passadoes*.

OF

of Dressing Horses. 173

OF THE

The Working the Bitt when the Horse goes Straight Forward.

WHEN the Horse goes straight Forward, either Trotting, Galloping, or upon Corvets, if you Hold your *Hand Low*, it Presses more upon the *Barrs*, than the *Curb*, because the *Cheeks* of the *Bitt* are not pull'd so much to you, or to the *Neck* of the Horse; and therefore the *Curb* is not Straightned so much, and so the Horse is at more Liberty, and his Head a little Higher: But when you Hold your Bridle-Hand a little Higher, and pull it up to you, then the *Curb* works more, and pulls Down the Horses *Head*; the Reason is plain; for when you pull the *Cheeks* Hard, and Up, then you pull the *Mouth* of the *Bitt* Down; and so the Horses *Head*, because it works hard on the *Curb*: For it is most True; That when the *Cheeks* of the *Bitt* are pull'd Up, the *Mouth* goes Down, and Straightens the *Curb*, the *Hand* being High; and when the *Cheeks* are

Y y not

174 The New Method

not pull'd Hard, then the *Curb* is Slackt, and the *Horses Head* at more Liberty; for the pressure of the *Ears* and *Curb*, Depends upon the *Cheeks*; for when the *Cheeks* goe Up, the *Mouth* of the *Bitt* goes Down; and when the *Cheeks* of the *Bitt* goe Down, the *Mouth* of the *Bitt* goes Up. This is the *Operation*, and the *Effects*, of the *Bitt*.

Of Another

Operation of the Bitt.

I Must tell you, That the *Cheeks* lie Slope to you, and the *Reins* more Slope, before they come to your Hand; so the *Bitt* cannot Press very much on the Horse, being so far from the *Perpendicular-Line*: and as the *Cheeks* are pull'd Up, the *Mouth* goes Down; and as the *Cheeks* goe Down, the *Mouth* goes Up; alwayes Contrary.

The *Perpendicular-Line*, is, When you Thrust
your

of Dressing Horses. 175

your *Hand* Forward just *Perpendicular*, to the End of the *Cheeks*, and so pull it up Hard, and it Works extreamly upon the *Curb*, which is to pull his *Head* Down. This I never Use; but thought fit to Tell you what it is, and the Effects of it.

OF THE

Operation of the two Reins Separated in both

Hands.

I Told you, the Inward *Rein* prest the Horse on the Outside of the *Turn*, and made him Look into the *Turn*. And I told you, the Outward *Rein* prest the Horse on the Inside of the *Turn*, and made him Look out of the *Turn*; and for *Passager*, he must be prest on the Inside, and therefore to be Help't with the Outward *Rein*. But to make him Look into the *Turn*, I Help with the Inward *Rein* too; So I Help with both *Reins* in *Passager*; the Inward *Rein* to make him

Yy 2 Look

176 The New Method

Look into the *Turn*, and the Outward *Rein* to bring In his Outward *Shoulder*, and to Press him on the Inside, for many Reasons that I have already Exprest.

T O

*Work with the Bridle in the Left Hand
Only.*

YOur *Little Finger* Separating the *Reins*, the *Left Rein* lies under the *Little Finger*, and the *Right Rein* lies above the *Little Finger*; so that for the *Left Hand*, the *Hand* on the Contrary side of his *Neck*, the *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, you pull the *Little Finger* to you, and that Straightens the *Left Rein*: And for the *Right Rein*, because that lies above the *Little Finger*, your *Hand* on the Outside, your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*: Here you must Bend your *Hand* Inward, and then your *Little Finger* Slacker; and this Works the *Right Rein*, as the *Left Rein*
the

of Dressing Horses. 177

the *Little Finger* Straightned, and the *Ring-Finger* Slack't; and because the Horses Body should not Rise too High, keep the *Bridle-Hand* Low, and that will put him upon the *Hanches*: And this is the Truth and Quintessence of the *Bridle-Hand*, for the Inward *Rein* of either side.

OF THE

Operation of the Outward Rein of the Bridle.

FOR the *Right Hand*, you must turn up your *Little Finger*; and as you put it up, put it a little on the Inside of the *Turn*; but you must bring in your outward *Shoulder* at the same time: And or the *Left Hand*, turn up your *Little Finger*, and your *Thumb* down as you did before; and at the same time put it on the Inside of the *Turn*, and bring in your outward *Shoulder* moderately.

178 The New Method

THE
Reins *being both in your Left Hand,*

HOW
To Work *them Both at One Time for*
P A S S A G E R.

FOR the *Right Hand*, Put your *Hand* on the Outside: and for the *Left Hand*, put your *Hand* without his *Neck* on the Inside of the *Turn*, and that Pulls and Works the outward *Rein*. So now you see, on both *Hands*, How you can perfectly Work both *Reins* at one time, which is the Quintessence of *Passager*; the Reasons I have told you afore.

OF THE
Use of the Two Reins of the Bridle.

YOU must Help with the Outward *Rein* of the *Bridle* in the *Piroite*, because his Fore-
parts

of Dressing Horses. 179

parts are Straightned, and his Hinder-parts at Liberty; so you must Help with the Outward Rein of the *Bridle* for *Demy-Voltoes*, and in *Pasadoes* by a *Wall*; because his Fore-parts are Straightned, and his Hinder-parts at Liberty, being but Half a *Piroite*; so you must Help with the Outward Rein of the *Bridle*, in *Corvets* Backward upon a Straight *Line*, his Fore-parts being Straightned; and his Hinder-parts at Liberty, because they Lead: So you must Help with the Outward Rein of the *Bridle*, in all *Leaps*, *Croupadoes*, *Balotadoes*, and *Capriols*; either Forward, or upon *Voltoes*; because his Fore-parts are Straightned, and his *Croup* at Liberty, or else he could not Leap.

For *Terra a Terra*, you must Help with the Inward Rein of the *Bridle*; because then his Hinder-parts are Straightned, and his Fore-parts Inlarged; so with the Inward Rein for *Demy-Voltoes*, because his Hinder-parts are Straightned, and his Fore-parts Inlarged: But in *Corvets* upon *Voltoes*, the Outward Rein, because his Hinder-parts are Subjected, and his Fore-parts In-

Z z 2 larged,

larged, and so forward; in *Corvets* with the Outward *Rein*, because there his Hinder-parts are Subjected, and his Fore-parts are Inlarged, and at Liberty to go Forward, because they Lead.

Observations *How to Hold the Reins of the Bridle.*

WHENsoever you Hold your *Hand* Even with the *Pommel*, it Slackens the *Curb*; if in the Middle of the *Pommel*, it is Slacken'd more; if upon his *Neck*, it is Slackned most, because it is Farthest from the *Perpendicular Line*; and the Higher you hold your *Bridle-Hand* above the *Pommel*, the *Curb* is Straightned the more; because you can pull Harder, and go Neerer, by that means, to the *Perpendicular Line*. The *Hand* should never be above two or three *Fingers* above the *Pommel*, a little Forwarder, and Easie, but Firm; for there is nothing makes a Horse go more of the *Hanches*, than a Light *Hand*, and
Firm;

of Dressing Horses. 181

Firm; for when he hath nothing to Rest on Before, he will Rest Behind; for, he will Rest on something; and when he Rests Behind, that's upon the *Hanches*: A *Leight Hand* is the greatest Secret we Have; but there is no Horse can be Firm of the *Hand*, except he Suffers the *Curb*, and Obey it.

Here ends the Quintessence of Working with the *Cavezone*, and the *Bridle*.

M Y

OPINION for SPURS.

THe *Spurrs* ought rather to be Long-Neckt, than Short Neckt; because with Long-Neckt *Spurrs*, the Rider makes less Motion, either in Correcting, or Helping his Horse, which a good Horse-man should alwayes Do; for he that is the Quietest on Horse-Back, is the Greatest Master; for ill Horse-Men cannot sit Still on Horse-Back.

A a a The

182 The New Method

The Fashion of the *Spurrs* should be *A la Conestable*, the Wansnot too Long, and Compass'd, and Black Sanguine; the Buckles and Rowels of *Silver*, not Burnisht; because they do not Rust as *Iron*, and therefore Ranckles not a Horses sides so much. The Rowels should contain Six Points, for that Hits a Horse Best; Five Points are too Few: And the Rowells should be as Sharp as possible can be; for it is much Better to let him Bleed Freely, than with Dull *Spurrs* to raise Knobs and Bunches on his Side, which might give him the *Farcy*; but Bleeding can do him no Hurt, when Dull *Spurrs* may: Besides, there is nothing doth a Horse so much Good, as to make him Smart, when you Correct him: There is, therefore, nothing like Sharp *Spurrs*, being used Discreetly, to make all Horses whatsoever Know them, Fear them, and Obey them; for until they Suffer, with Obedience, the *Spurrs*, they are but Half Horses, and never Drest.

The *Shambriere* is too Dull a thing; and so are all Whips, Hand-whips, and all; Whips of *Wyre* fetch Blood, but not in the Right place,

as

of Dressing Horses. 183

as *Spurrs* do. A *Bulls-Pistle* is good for a *Colt*, before you wear *Spurrs*, but afterward it is too Dull; a Smart Rod is much Better than any of them; but the *Spurrs* beyond all.

Of the Several

CORRECTIONS,

AND

HELPS with the SPURRS.

First, the *Correction* of the *Spurrs* being a Punishment comes After a Fault is Committed, either to put In his *Buttock* or *Croup*, when he puts it Out; or else to put it Out, when he puts it too much In, when he should be *Entier*; this is to be done with one *Spur*, and sometimes with both *Spurrs*: He is to be *Corrected* with both *Spurrs* when he is *Resty*, and will not go Forward; or to Settle him on the *Hand*, when he *Joggles* his *Head*, then both the *Spurrs* will

Aaa 2

do

184 The New Method

do him Good; or when he is *Apprehensive*, and *Ombraqueux*, the *Spurrs* may do him good; or that he offers to *Bite* or *Strike*, then the *Spurrs* will Divert him; or that he Rises too High, or Boltes, then give him the *Spurrs*; when he is falling Half-way down, then the *Spurrs* will Cure him; but if you give him the *Spurrs*, just when he is Rising, then it may bring him Over, if he will not Advance, which is to Rise before; then a good Stroke with both the *Spurrs*, will make him Rise; if he be a Dull Jade, then smartly to give him the *Spurrs* is good; or that he is Lazy, or Slack of his Mannage, then to give him the *Spurrs* Quickens him.

And so the *Spurrs* are for many things as a *Correction*, and therefore you must give them as Strongly, and Sharply, still as you can, with all your Strength; and have very Sharp *Spurrs* too, that he may Feel them to the Purpose, so that Blood may follow; for otherwise it is not a *Correction*: You must Strike the Horse always some three or four Fingers behind the *Girthes*, and sometimes towards the *Flanks*, if it be to put
In

of Dressing Horses. 185

In his *Group*: And, believe it, there is nothing like the *Spurrs*; for, What makes him Sensible to the *Heel*, but the *Spurrs*? Therefore Use them, and Use them until he Obey you; for no Horse can be a *Ready-Horse*, until he Obeys the *Heel*.

But, Remember you do not Dull him with the *Spurrs*; for then he will not Care for them no more than a Stone, or a Block; therefore you must give them Sharply, when you give them; but give them but Seldom, and upon Just Occasion.

When he Maliciously Rebell's against What you would have him Do, leave not *Spurring* of him, and Soundly, until he Obey you: And when he Obeys you in the least Kind, Leight off, and send him to the Stable, and the next Morning Try him again; and if he Obey in the least Kind, Cherish him, and make Much of him; and Forgive him many Faults the next Morning, that he may see you have *Mercy* as well as *Justice*, and that you can *Reward*, as well as *Punish*.

Bbb And

186 The New Method

And now you see, *Corrections* are Better than *Helps*, and of what great Efficacy the *Spurrs* timely and discreetly given, are for the Dressing of Horses; for there is but the *Hand* and the *Heels*, and so the *Spurrs* are Half the Business in Dressing Horses; only the *Hand* hath the Preheminence: Though there be two *Spurrs*, and but one *Bridle*, because the Horse hath but one *Mouth*, and two *Sides*; yet, if the Horse be not Settled upon the *Hand*, you cannot make him Subject to the *Heels*. But the *Correction* of the *Spurrs* is so Necessary, and Effectual, as no Horse can be made a *Ready Horse* without them; and therefore Esteem them Highly, next settling a Horse upon the *Hand*; which must be First.

All *Helps* are to Prevent Faults, and to go before Faults; as *Corrections* come after Faults, to Punish for Offending. The *Spurrs* are to be used as a Help thus; When the Horse goes *Terra a Terra*, your outward *Legg* close to him when he Slacks, turn your *Heel* to him to Pinch him with the *Spurrs*; which you may easily do, even to Blood, and no Body perceive it; for that

ought

of Dressing Horses. 187

ought to be done Neatly, and Delicately, because the *Spurrs* are a Neat, and most Excellent Help, and the Quintessence of all Helps in the *Mannage*; and if the Horse Suffer and Obey this, whilst you stay him on the *Hand*, you may say, He is an Excellent Horse.

This Quickens him, and puts him Forward; but yet let me Tell you, Though this is an excellent Help for *Terra a Terra*, yet it is not so good a Help for *Terra a Terra*, as it is for all *Ayres*; either to *Pinch* him with both the *Spurrs*, or but with one: And the Reason, is, Because it makes him *Croup* more, and puts him Together on his Hinder-parts, than puts him Forward; and therefore more proper for all manner of *Ayres*, than for *Terra a Terra*, though very good for both.

And thus much for that Excellent Help with the *Spurrs*, call'd *Pinching*.

There is another Help with the *Spurrs*, which I call a *Help*, because it is not so Violent as a *Correction*, and is not so Pressing as *Pinching*; but

between *Spurring* and *Pinching*; And that is thus: When the Horse Gallops his *Croup In*, or *Terra a Terra*, if he Obeys not the *Legg* enough, being close to him, or very near it, then make the Motion with your *Legg*, as if you did *Spurr* him, and Hit him with your *Spurr*, with as gentle a Touch as can be; and no more than to let him Feel it a little; and this is the Gentlest of all things, with the *Spurrs*, which makes him Obey the *Spurrs*, and puts him Forward, and is excellent for *Terra a Terra*, or *Le petit Gallop his Croup In*, and much Better than *Pinching*; for it puts him Forward, and makes him Obey the *Spurrs* at the same time; but it is not good for *Ayres*; for there he should Leap Upwards, and go Forward, but very Little; and therefore *Pinching* is Best for *Ayres*, because it Raifes his *Croup*, and therefore goes not Forward; and that little Touch with the *Spur*, like *Spurring*, is good for *Terra a Terra*, and *Le petit Gallop his Croup In*, because it puts him Forward, and makes him Obey the *Spur*.

If your Horse understands this *Correction*, and
the

of Dressing Horses. 189

the two several *Helps* with the *Spurrs*, being made Sensible to him, you may be well Assured he will Need none of them after a while, but be so Sensible, as he will go Freely, and Obey you Willingly, only with the *Calf* of your *Legg*; for the Help of the *Thighes* is a Ridiculous conceit: for indeed, there is no *Helps* but the *Spurrs*, and the *Calf* of the *Leggs*, that the Horse can possibly Feel.

OF THE SECRET HELPS

OF THE
CALF of the *LEGG* and *SPURRS*.

WHen you are Stiff in the *Hamms*, which is putting Down your *Heel*, then the *Calf* of the *Legg* comes to the Horse, but the *Heel* is removed from him. When you Bend in the *Hamms*, which is to put Down your *Toes*, then the *Calf* of the *Legg* is removed from him, but

Ccc the

190 The New Method

the *Heel* comes to him. These are as great Truths, as they are *Secrets*.

There is nothing in the world makes Horses Resty and Vitious many ferveral Wayes like the *Spurrs*, given out of time; and nothing in the world Dreffes Horses perfectly, like the *Spurrs* given in time.

Now you have the Perfection of the *Hand* and the *Heels*, which is the only thing to Drefs Horses perfectly withal, and nothing else.

OF THE ROD.

THe *Rod* we Use feldome for a *Correction*, but for *Helps*, and that many times more for Grace, than Use; for one *Rod* will serve us half a Year: 'Tis the *Hand* and the *Heels* that Dreffes Horses, and nothing else.

The *Helps* with the *Rod*, are not so good for Souldiers Horses, for they should go only with the *Hand*
and

of Dressing Horses. 191

and the *Heel*; for the *Sword* must be in your Right Hand, and not the *Rod*: But you may Use it, to Shew it still on the contrary side on which he Goes, or hold it up with a Grace at every Change.

For Terra a Terra with the Rod.

On the Right Hand, hold Up your *Rod* High, with a Grace, and give him sometimes a Blow on the Shoulders, if there be need; and sometimes a Blow over the Shoulders upon the Croup, if he Requires it.

For *Terra a Terra* on the Left Hand, hold the *Rod* up High, or put it to his Flanck, with a Grace, and hold it there during his *Voltoes*, or give him a Blow with it on the Flank, or on the Shoulder, if he requires it.

Use the same *Helps* with the *Rod*, upon *Demy-Voltoes*, or *Passadoes*: For the *Piroite*, hold it on the Contrary side still.

For Corvets with the Rod.

On the Right Hand in *Voltoes*, hold the *Rod* somewhat Short, and *Help* him cross the *Neck*, with a Grace, sometimes Touching him, and sometimes not; and a good Blow now and then, if he Requires it: On the Left Hand in *Corvets*, *Help* him on the Right Shoulder, with a Grace, and a just time.

Another *Help* with the *Rod* in *Corvets*, is, To hold the *Rod* a little Long, and to Whisk, and Shake it Forwards and Backwards, with your Arm up, but not Straight, rather Bowing a little in the Elbow: When you go Forward, the Horse's right side to the Wall; there is no *Help* with the *Rod* more Graceful, than to Strike the Wall perpetually with the *Rod*.

of Dressing Horses. 193

T O

Help with the Rod in all Manner of
Leaps.

TO Whisk the *Rod* Forward, and Backward, is a Graceful *Help*, but it Forces a Horse a little too Forward, until he be Used to it.

To *Help* the Horse with the *Rod*, not Over your Shoulder, but Over the Bent of your Arm, your Arm from your Body, and a little Bowed, so that the Point of the *Rod* falls in the middle of his *Croup*, is a graceful *Help*, but somewhat difficult to do.

But the best and surest *Help*, though not so Graceful, is, To turn the *Rod* in your Hand, the Point toward the Horses *Croup*, and *Help* him so every time, and in time, one Stroke only; but if he Raises not his *Croup* enough, then *Help* him *De tout temps*, which is with two or three Strokes together, in Time: And this is the Surest *Help*.

Ddd If

194 The New Method

If your Horse be very Tight Behind, which few are, then *Help* him only before with the *Rod*, and in Time.

If you would make your Horse only *Croup* with his *Hinder* parts, and not strike out, then *Help* him on the middle of his *Croup*; if you would have him strike Out, then *Help* him with your *Rod*, on the setting on of his *Dock*: And if you would have him put both his *Hinder Leggs* under his *Belly*, then Strike him with the *Rod* a little above the *Gambrels*. So these three several *Helps* with the *Rod*, makes your Horse to Croop, to Strike out, and to put his *Hinder-Leggs* under his *Belly*.

But there is no *Help* with the *Rod*, like *Helping* him with two *Rods*; one to Raise him before, and the other *Rod* to *Help* him under his *Belly*; which puts him so much upon the *Hanches*, as nothing is like it, or near it, upon *Corsets*, when he is Tyed Short, my New Way, at the *Single Pillar*.

of Dressing Horses. 195

O F THE VOICE.

THe *Voice* is Used three manner of Ways;
Either as a *Correction*, by *Tbreathing*; or as
a *Help*, to *Incourage* the Horse; or as a *Courtship*
to him, by *Flattering* of him; which all Three,
we seldom or never Use: For it is not the *Sense*
of *Hearing*, or *Sight*; but the *Sense* of *Touch*, and
only the *Hand*, and the *Heels*, that Dresses Horses
perfectly.

O F THE T O N G U E.

THe *Help* of the *Tongue* is an Excellent *Help*
to *Incourage*, and put a Horse Together,
either in *Terra a Terra*; but especially in all *Agres*,
nothing Better.

196 The New Method

How Horses are to be
REWARDED & PUNISHED:
AND THAT
FEAR doth *Much*; *LOVE*, *Little*.

IT is Impossible to Dress any Horse, but first he must Know, and Acknowledge me to be his Master, by Obeying me: That is, He must *Fear* me, and out of that *Fear*, *Love* me, and so *Obey* me. For it is *Fear* makes every Body *Obey*, both Man and Beast; and therefore see that he *Fears* you, and then it is for his own sake he *Obeyes* you; because else he would be *Punished*: And *Love* is not so sure a Hold, for there I Depend upon his *Will*; but when he *Fears* me, he Depends upon *Mine*; and that's a *Ready Horse*: But if I Depend upon his *Will*, that's a *Ready-Man*. Therefore *Love* doth no Good, but *Fear* doth All: And so let them *Fear* you, which is the *Ground* of Dressing all Horses whatsoever. And this is the Counsel of a Friend.

Plu-

of Dressing Horses. 197

Pluvinel, and most of the Great Masters in *Horse-manship*, Praise alwayes Gentlenes, and Flatteries, and making much of *Horses*, either by Clapping, Stroking them, or speaking Flatteringly unto them, or giving them some Reward to Eat: And *Pluvinel* sayes, One ought to be a Prodigal in Caressing, and making much of them, and a Niggard in Corrections, and careful not to Offend them; and that there is no other way to Dress Horses but this. But some *Horse-men* Never make much of them, or very Rarely; neither Abroad, before they get Up, when they Ride them, nor when they Light, nor in the Stable; and yet these Horses go Well. They do not Threaten them with the *Voyce*, or ever Speak to them, and no doubt but they do it on Purpose to keep them in Subjection, and Fear of them: For Familiarity breeds Contempt; and Curtesie doth no Good, but makes them Presume; and

Jeau makes them Diligent still to Obey.

Neither do they Use the *Rod* at all; no more do I; for one *Rod* will serve me almost a Year; nor Use the *Voyce*, but a good *Hand*, and good

Eee *Heels*,

198 The New Method

Heels, which only *Dresses Horses*; and seldom lets a Fault escape without Punishment. When they have *Corrected* them one Morning, it may be they will *Spur* them the next Morning; but otherwise never *Correct* them without a Fault; and if they make none, they are not *Punisht*;* and there's their *Reward*. Certainly this may be good for *Dressing of Horses*.

For my part, when they do Well, I *Cherish* and *Reward* them; and when they do ill, I *Punish* them; for, Hope of *Reward*, and Fear of *Punishment*, Governs this whole World; not only Men, but Horses: And thus they will *Chuse* the *Reward*, and *Shun* the *Punishment*. They are *Punisht* with nothing but the *Spurs*; for all *Whipps*, even of *Wyre*, *Chambrieres*, or *Bulls-Pisles*, are *Toyes*. The *Rod* is more for *Grace* than *Use*; but *Reward*, or no *Reward*, is nothing at all in Comparison of the *Art of Riding*: For, let an Ignorant Fellow (which most are for any thing I can perceive) *Flatter* his Horse, and not *Punish* him; or *Punish* him, and not *Flatter* him; or *Punish* and *Flatter* him; yet I will not
Flatter

of Dressing Horses. 199

Flatter the *Rider*, but will tell you, He shall Spoil your Horse, let him do what he will; because he wants *Art*.

Opposition in Horses AGAINST the RIDER;

A Signe of
STRENGTH and *SPIRIT*.

BE not Discouraged if your Horse do *Oppose* you, for it shews *Strength*, *Spirit*, and *Stomack*; and a Horse having all those, cannot chuse but be made a *Ready-Horse*, if he be under the Discipline of an Understanding Hand, and Knowing Heels.

When a Horse doth not *Rebel*, it shews *Weakness*, and faintness of *Spirit*, and no *Courage*; and where Nature is so much Wanting, it is Hard for *Art* to Supply it: But truly I never knew any Horse in my Life, but before he was

E e e 2 per-

200 The New Method

perfectly Drest, would Rebel, and Extreamly too, and a great while before he would go Freely; but a little still, against his will, until he be perfectly Drest.

Certainly there is no Horſe but will Strive at the firſt in the Dreſſing, to have his own will, rather than to *Obe*y your *will*; nor doth any Horſe love *Subjection*, nor any other Creature, until there is no Remedy, and then they *Obe*y; and the Cuſtom of *Obedience* makes them *Ready-Horſes*: They will Strive all the Wayes poſſibly they can, to be Free, and not Subjected; but when they ſee it will not be, then they *Yield*, and not before. So they Deſerve no Thanks for their Obedience.

No man in the World, no, not the Wiſeſt, if he were put in the Form of a Horſe, with his Supreme Underſtanding, could poſſibly find out more ſubtle Wayes to Oppoſe a Man, than a Horſe will; nay, nor near ſo many, I dare ſay: Whence I conclude, That the Horſe muſt know you are his Maſter; that is, He muſt *Fear* you, and then he will *Love* you for his own Sake:

Fear

of Dressing Horfes. 201

Fear is the sure Hold; for *Fear* doth All things in this World: *Love*, little; and therefore let your Horfe *Fear* you.

What makes a Horfe go by

ROTE, or ROUTINE.

THat which makes a Horfe go by *Rote*, or *Routine*, is absolutely his *Eyes*; and therefore I would Advise you, to have as few Marks as you can in the *Mannage*: That is, No *Pillars* but in the Out-side, and there but one for My Way upon *Ayres*, and that will not Fix his *Sight*; so that then he will Attend the *Hand* and the *Heel*: Nor too near the *Walls*, for then his *Eyes* will Attend them; Nor to make him go in *One Place* Always; for there his *Eyes* will make him go by *Rote* again: but several places will make him Attend the *Hand* and the *Heel*. And this way, and no other, will Cure him of going by *Rote*.

F ff THAT

202 The New Method

THAT

*A Horse of Three Years Old is too Young for the
M A N N A G E.*

A Young Horse of *Three Years Old*, is but a *Gristle*, and easily Spoil'd; and besides, his Understanding is not comn to him; so that Wanting Understanding, and being so Weak, you must have Patience to stay Three Years more at the Least, until he hath Both: Stops, and going Back, will Strain his *Back*, and Spoil him: so that I would rather have a Horse of Six, Seven, or Eight Years old, so he be Sound and not Vitious, than a Horse of *Three Years Old*; for I can force him, and make him a *Ready-Horse* in three Months.

But some will say *Boyes* learn Best, and so *Coltes*: I Answer, No; For if men could be Beaten to it, as *Boyes* are, they would Learn much Better, and Sooner: but I can Force my Horses of those Years; and having both Understanding, and Strength, they will and must of Necessity learn much Sooner and Better.

How

of Dressing Horses. 203

How a Man should

SIT PERFECTLY

ON

HORSE -- BACK.

BEfore he Mounts his Horse, he must see every Thing in order about the Horse; which is done in an Instant, without Peering and Prying about every thing; as they say, *Pour Faire l'entendu.*

When he is in the Saddle, (for I suppose most Men know how to get Up) he must Sit down in the Saddle upon his *Twist*, and not on his *Buttocks*; though most think Nature made those to Sit on, but not on *Horse-Back*.

Being Plac'd upon his *Twist*, in the middle of the Saddle, advancing towards the Pommel of the Saddle, as much as he can; leaving a handful of Space between his Hinder-parts and the *Cantle*, or *l'Arçon* of the Saddle, his *Leggs* being straight Down, as if he were on *Foot*, his *Knees* and *Thighes* turned inwards to the Saddle; hold-

Fff 2 ing

204 The New Method

ing both of them Fast, as if they were Glewed to the Saddle, (for a *Horse-man* hath nothing but those two with the *Counterpoise* of his *Body* to keep him on *Horse-Bail*;) his *Feet* planted firmly upon the *Stirrups*; his *Heels* a little Lower than his *Toes*, that the end of his *Toes* may pass the *Stirrups* half an *Inch*, or a little more, and Stiff in the *Hams*, or *Jarrets*, his *Leggs* not too far from the *Horse's Sides*, nor too near, that is, not to Touch them; which is of great Use for *Helps*, that I will Shew you hereafter.

The *Reins* of the *Bridle* are to be in the *Left-Hand*, his little *Finger* separating the *Reins*, and grasping the rest in his *Hand*, with his *Thumb* upon the *Reins*, his *Arm* bent Close to his *Body*, but not constrain'd; his *Bridle-Hand* some three *Fingers* Above the *Pommel*, and some two *Fingers* Before the *Pommel*, that the *Pommel* may not hinder the *Reins* in their *Working*, and just over the *Neck* of the *Horse*.

In the *Right Hand*, he must have a *Whistling Rod*, not too Long, like an *Angle-Rod*; nor too Short, like a *Poinson*; but, if either, let it be
Short;

of Dressing Horses. 205

for there are many Graceful *Helps* with a Short *Rod*, that a Long *Rod* will not Admit of: you must Hold it a little off, from that End beyond your *Hand*; not only to make much of your Horse with it, but to Hold it the Faster. The *Right Hand*, where the *Rod* is, ought to be a little before your *Bridle-Hand*, and the *Right Arm* a little Loofer, than your *Left Arm*; but not too Far from your *Body*, the point of the *Rod* bending a little Inwards, your *Brest* out.

You must Look a little *Gay*, and *Pleasantly*, but not *Laughing*; and Look directly between the Horses *Ears*, when he goes Forwards: I do not mean, you should be Stiff, like a Stake, or like a Statue on *Horse-Back*, but much otherwise; that is, Free, and with all the Liberty in the world, as the *French-Man* sayes, in Dancing, *A la negligence*; and so I would have a Man on Horse-Back, *En Cavalier*, and not Formal; for that shewes a *Scholler*, more than a *Master*; and I never saw any Formality, but me-thought it Lookt something of the Simple and Foolish.

The Seat is so much, (as you shall see here-

Ggg after)

206 The New Method

after) as it is the only thing that makes a Horse go Perfectly; and the very Manner of Sitting is beyond all other *Helps*: Therefore Despise it not, for I dare Boldly say, He that is not *Bel homme de Cheval*, shall never be *Bon homme de Cheval*.

For, the *Reins* both of the *Bridle* and the *Cavesson*, I have shewed you that which was never yet Known before: And so this is enough for the *Seat* of the *Cavalier*.

THE SECRET HELPS OF THE HORSE--MANS BODY.

YOU must Sit Straight upon the *Truss*, and always keep your Self so, what Action soever the Horse makes; and to that End, you should always go to that which comes to you, which

of Dressing Horses. 207

which is a Contrary Action. As for Example; The Horse *Rises Before*, then you must put your *Body* a little Forward to him; for, did you go along with the Horse, you must put it Backward.

If the Horse *Strikes Behind*, or *Raises his Croup*, you must put your *Body* Backwards, which is Contrary to the Horses Motion; for, did you Follow the Horse, you must put your *Body* Forward, and be Thrown: But the Best, is, To *Sit Straight*, and the Action of the Horse will keep you on your *Twist*.

You must Understand, That the *Body* on Horse -- Back, is Divided into three Parts, two *Moveable*, and one *Immoveable*: The *Moveable* is the *Body* to the *Waste*; the *Immoveable*, from the *Waste* to the *Knees*; and the other *Moveable* from the *Knees* to the *Foot*.

The *Bodies -- Helps* are to be *Gentle Helps* for all Horses; for, to *Sit Strong* on Horse-Back, Astonishes the *Weak* Horse, makes the *Strong* go Counter-times, and forces him too much; makes a *Furious* Horse *Madd*; makes a *Resty* Horse

Ggg 2 more

208 The New Method

more *Resty*; and a Horse *Hard* on the *Hand*, to Run away, and Displeases all sorts of Horses. You are not neither, to *Sit Weak* on *Horse-Back*, but to *Sit Easy*; Gentle *Helps* being Best: For they *Fit* all Horses, and *Please* all Horses.

The New and True Method of Working at first, either Colts, Young Horses, or Old Ignorant Horses, upon Large Circles D'une piste.

NOW that you are on *Horse-Back*, Know how to *Sit*, and *Know* all your *Helpes*; I will shew you How to Dress your Horse Perfectly: Which is in the Manner Following.

The *Cavezone*, being My Way, the *Reins* in your *Hand*, the Inward *Cavezone's* Rein pull'd Hard, and Low, on the Inside of the *Turn*; Legg and Rein of a side that is within the *Turn*; which brings In the Horses outward *Shoulder*, the *Bridle-Hand* Low, and a little on the Out-side, or In-side, as you see Occasion: This gives the
Horse

of Dressing Horses. 209

Horse a good *Apu*, Working more on the *Barrs* than on the *Curb*, though it Works on both.

The Horses *Croup* being Out, and pulling In his outward *Shoulder*, presses the Horse on the Inside, and fits him to *Gallop* large, *D'une piste*; as also for a *Trot*, to Supple his *Shoulders*, being prest.

The Inside puts him upon the *Shoulders*, which gives him an *Apu*, and Supples his *Shoulders* extreamly, which is the first thing you must Work on; for, without Suppling a Horses *Shoulders* extreamly, he can never do any thing; for that is the First and Principal business, and nothing doth it like the *Cavezone* (my Way.)

Give him no other Lesson than this, until he be very Supple on the *Shoulders* upon his *Trot*; for that is the Foundation of all things in the *Manage*, to Supple him, and make him Leight; and never *Gallop* him until he be so Leight, as he offers to *Gallop* of himself; and this *Trotting*, and *Galloping* large, as they call it, *D'une piste*, though his *Croup* be Out, and the Horse Lean's so much on the Inside, as you would think he would Fall, he goes the Surer for it. Hhh Stop

210 The New Method

Stop him but seldom; and when you do, Stay him rather by *Little*, and *Little*, than with a *Sudden Stop*; for that *Weakens* a *Young Horse's Reins*, and *Back* very much; and when he is on the *Hand*, then put your *Body Back* to put him upon the *Hanches*, and give him *Harder Stops*; but then your outward *Legg* is to put In his outward *Legg*, or else he cannot *Stop* upon the *Hanches*, ^{the} ~~your~~ outward *Hanch* being out.

O F LARGE CIRCLES Upon A T R O T.

WHEN you Work your Horse upon *Large Circles D'une piste*, upon a *Trott*, with the *Caveçone* (my Way) in your *Hand*, *Legg* and *Reyn* on the *Inside*, either upon *Large* or *Narrow Circles*, *D'une piste*, upon his *Trott*, where his *Leggs* in that *Action* are *Cross*, you must know

of Dressing Horses. 211

know how they Ought to Go ; Which is thus :

His *Hinder-Legg* on the Inside of the *Turn*, and his *Fore-Legg* on the Out-side of the *Turn*, are Lifted up together at a time ; and his *Hinder-Legg* on the Inside of the *Turn*, when it is set Down, is set a little beyond his outward *Hinder-Legg*, and a little Forwarder ; and his *Fore-Legg* without the *Turn*, is set Down at the same time, a little Forwarder than his inward *Fore-Legg*, and both *Circularly* ; and when he Changes his *Leggs* Cross, then his outward *Hinder-Legg* is set before his inward *Hinder-Legg*, and his inward *Fore-Legg* before his outward *Fore-Legg*, and beyond it, and both *Circularly*.

His inward *Hinder-Legg* being set down Thus, must of necessity Bend, and Supple his *Shoulders*, and the *Cavezone's* inward *Reyn* being Wrought, as I told you before, the inward *Legg* must of necessity put Out his *Croup*, and Supple his *Shoulders* ; and thus he is Bent and Suppled extreamly, and can never be *Entier* ; and his *Leggs* always go Right and Truly, which is the most excellent *Lesson* that can be.

Hhh 2 OF

OF
GALLOPING

UPON

Circles *D'une piste.*

TO Work your Horse *D'une piste*, upon Large, or Narrow *Circles*, the *Cavezone's* Reyn in your *Hand*, Legg and Reyn on the Inside, and the outward Reyn of the *Bridle*, if need be, to Supple his *Shoulders*, pulling the inward Reyn hard to bring In his outward *Shoulder*, upon a *Gallop*; I will tell you How his *Leggs* go, for a *Gallop* is another *Action* than a *Trott*; for a *Trott* is *Cross*, and a *Gallop* is both of a *Side*, always *Leading* with his *Leggs* within the *Turn*, and makes Four distinct *Times*, with his four *Leggs*, as I have shewed you before.

Well then, his *Fore-Legg* within the *Turn* *Leads Circularly*, and is set *Down* before, and beyond his outward *Fore-Legg*, and his *Hinder-Legg* within the *Turn* follows; but is set *Down* a little before

of Dressing Horses. 213

before his outward *Hinder-Legg*, and a little beyond it, which Supples his *Shoulders*; and his *Hinder Parts* being put Out thus, makes him *Gallop Right*, and nothing like it.

This is a most Excellent Lesson, and the Foundation of All Things in the *Mannage*: To *Trott* and *Gallop* thus, his *Fore-Parts* come towards the Center, and his *Hinder-Parts* flies it, being prest more upon the *Shoulders* than the *Croup*: But when he is thus Prest, and Supple in the *Shoulders*, the *Croup* is easily Wrought afterwards.

I must Tell you, in these Lessons the Horse is Prest, and Leans extreamly on the Inside of the *Turn*, which is Rare: To Supple his *Shoulders*, to Walk him thus too, and Stop him with your outward *Legg*, is very good.

ANOTHER
EXCELLENT LESSON
to Supple a
HORSES SHOULDERS.

GO as if the Horse's *Head* was to the *Pillar*, (though you have none) and on the *Left Hand*, and pull the Inward *Cavezone's* Reyn hard to you; and though he goes on the *Left Hand*, his *Shoulders* are Suppled for the *Right*. Then go on the *Right Hand*, and pull the Inward *Cavezone's* Reyn hard to you; though the Horse goes on the *Right Hand*, yet his *Shoulders* are Suppled for the *Left*.

This is an Admirable Lesson to Supple a Horses *Shoulders*; and thus he shall never be *Entier*.

Another Lesson for Suppling a
HORSES SHOULDERS

Upon
LARGE CIRCLES.

U Pon *Large Circles*, his *Croup* Out; to all the *Helps*, both with the *Cavexone*, *Bridle*, *Reyns*, *Leggs*, and *Body*, as I told you before; only this is to be Added, for a while, till the Horse is Accustomed to it.

I would have you *Trott* him without Stopping of him upon his *Trott*; but from his *Trott* to *Gallop* him, *Le petit Gallop* Gently; and from his *Gallop* to his *Trott* again; and though of the same *Hand* still, yet Change him from *Trott* to *Gallop*, and from *Gallop* to *Trott*, until you think it Sufficient, and then Stop him, either upon a *Trott*, or *Gallop*, which you please: This is a most Excellent Lesson; not only to Supple his *Shoulders*, but to make him Attend, and Obey the Will of his *Rider*; having no continued

Rule to Fix his Mind on, to go by *Rote*, either in *Trotting*, or *Galloping*, but still to Obey the Man, as he *Helps* or *Commands* him to either; and not Knowing when it is, he must absolutely Obey both the *Hand* and the *Heel*; and so Stopping sometimes upon a *Trott*, and sometimes upon a *Gallop*; not Knowing when he should be Stopt, nor where he should be Stopt, makes him still to Obey the Man's both *Hand* and *Heel*; and therefore a Better Lesson cannot be in the World; and therefore Use it: For, all our End, is, To make a Horse Obey the *Hand* and the *Heels*; And this Lesson doth it, as much as any Lesson can do.

If the Horse Retain his Forces, then *Gallop* him Fast, and Quick; and then Softly again, and then Fast again, as Occasion serves: And this Softly, and Quick, upon his *Gallop*, (not Knowing when he must do Either) makes him Obey both his Riders *Hand*, and *Heels*; which is the End of our Work, and the Quintessence of the *Mannage*.

When you have Supplied the Horse sufficiently
on

of Dressing Horses. 217

on the *Shoulders*, and find him Hard on the *Hand*, in not being upon the *Hanches*; then Trot him *Large D'une piste*, and Stop him Often, and good Hard Stops with your outward *Legg*; and pull him down, your *Body* back, and when he least Thinks of it; but if he would Stop of himself, put him Forward without Stopping of him, and Stop him when he Thinks not of it, and do the same upon a *Gallop*: Stop him Often, and Hard, and put him Back sometimes, and you will find him very much upon the *Hanches*. This is an Excellent Lesson, both to Settle him on the *Hand*; and to put him upon the *Hanches*: But when you have done that, you must not Continue this Lesson long, for it Pinches a Horse very much on the Back; besides, it makes him Fearful to go Forward, and so may make him Resty, and many Inconveniencies may come of it; therefore your own Judgment must Work according to Occasion, when you do Stop him (as I formerly have Told you:) You must Stop him upon a *Walk* too, as well as upon a *Trott*, or a *Gallop*.

Kkk All

218 The New Method

All these Lessons are only to Supple a Horſes *Shoulders*; and ſee that you Uſe no other Lessons than Theſe, until the Horſe be extreamly Supple of his *Shoulders*, and be Firm on the *Hand*: Theſe are Rare Lessons, To ſettle a Horſe upon the *Hand*, to Supple his *Shoulders*, to make him Look into the *Turn*, to *Trott* and *Gallop* Right, (as he ſhould do) both *Leggs*, *Head*, *Neck*, *Body*, and all: And, beſides theſe, if you Work, as I have Told you, the Horſe ſhall never be *Entier*; which the *Italians* call the *Credençã*, which is the Worſt Vice a Horſe can have, and the moſt Dangerous. And theſe Lessons, with the *Caveçone* (My Way) hath theſe Rare Operations.

You muſt alwayes Uſe theſe Lessons, until the Horſe be extreamly Supple of his *Shoulders*, being the Principal Thing in Dreſſing Horſes, and the Firſt of our Work: Horſes doth nothing but by Cuſtom, and Habit, with often Repetitions to Fortify their Memories; and by good Lessons, and Methodical; and ſo do all Men in all Things that they do, Good or Bad: Therefore,

of Dressing Horses. 219

fore give these Good Lessons, and Repeat them Often to your Horse, and you will find by them Benefit, and Contentment: And Remember, that I Work upon the Understanding of a Horse, more than the Labour of his Body; for I assure you, he hath Imagination, Memory, and Judgment; Let the Learned say what they Please: I Work upon Those three Faculties; and that is the Cause my Horses go so Well.

Here is now the End of all my Lessons, in Working a Horse to Supple his *Shoulders*; which if you can do, according to those Lessons, then I will Assure you, you have done the better Half of the work, in Dressing, and Making up a perfect Horse.

The next Lessons are the other Half, and the Easier; which is, To make him Sensible to the *Heels*; and those shall follow, after some certain Maxims, which I will Insert here, and pray you to *Mark*, and *Remember* them.

The most Certain means to Unite a Horses Forces; to Assure, and Settle his *Head*, and his *Hanches*; to make him Leight on the *Hand*; and

Kkk 2 to

220 The New Method

to make him Capable of all Justness and Firmness in all sorts of *Ayres*, and *Mannages*; Depends absolutely on the perfection on the Stop (as I have Told you;) but first he must be Loosen'd and Suppl'd upon the *Trott*.

Going Back is a Remedy, to put him upon the *Hanches*; to Accommodate, and Adjust his *Hinder-Fet*; and Settle him on the *Hand*; and to make him Leight *Before*; to Stop Leightly, and in just Proportion.

You must never *Gallop* your Horse, until he be so Leight upon his *Trott*, as he begins to *Gallop* of himself: For the Exercise of the *Trott*, is the first, and most necessary Foundation to make him Leight; and is the Ground of every Lesson, which can make the Horse *Adroit*, and *Obedient*; and on which must be the Foundation of all sorts of *Mannages*.

The Property of the *Gallop*, is, To give him a good *Apy*, and to Settle his *Head*; and if he have too much *Fougue*, or Fire, *Le petit Gallop* will Appease him, and give him Patience; and if he Playes too much on the *Back*, it will take it off:

but

of Dressing Horses. 221

but all upon *Large Circles*: It Tempers his Spirits, makes him Well-Winded, and takes away his Too-violent Apprehensions, and Diverts him from Evil designs of *Fades Tricks*; of *Restiness*, and Double-Heart, and Supples all his *Members*.

EXCELLENT NOTES

To make an

END of the WORKING

OF THE

HORSES SHOULDERS.

HAVING shewed you, How you should Work, and *Supple* the Horses *Shoulders*, with the *Cavezone's Reyn* in your *Hand*, and not Tied to *Pommel*, which is the better Half of our Work; I will Shew you the other Half; which is, To make him Obey the *Heels*, and Work both *Shoulders* and *Croup* together; the *Cavezone's*

LII Reyn

222 The New Method

Reyn still in your *Hand*, and not Tied to the *Pommel*.

To Work the Horses *Croup* and *Shoulders* together, is, With the Inward *Reyn*, and Outward *Legg*; the inward *Reyn* of the *Cavezone* in your *Hand*, and pull'd on the Inside of the *Turn*, to bring In his Outward *Shoulder*, and to Press the Horse on the Inside of the *Turn*, that his *Leggs* without the *Turn* may be Free, and at Liberty, to lapp over his inward *Leggs*; which we call *Passager*, or *En-Cavalier*^{we}, his *Croup* In. This *Passager*, though it is the Action of a *Trott* with his *Leggs*, yet it is less Violent than a *Trott*, and more than a *Walk*; which is the best Action to Teach a Horse any thing of a Short *Trott*, and Together.

The first *Lesson* therefore that you must give him, upon this Action, is, His *Head* to the *Wall*, pulling the Inward *Cavezone's* *Reyn* hard to you, on the Inside, and Helping at the same time, with your outward *Legg*, the Horse to go *Byas*, his *Shoulders* before his *Croup*; which makes him Narrow behind, and so upon the *Hanches*;
because

of Dressing Horses. 223

because he is upon the Action of a *Trott*, his *Leggs* being *Crofs*.

If he do not Obey the *Heel*, give him the *Spurr* gently on that side; when the Horse goes thus, he is then *Prest* on the Inside of the *Turn*; if this be on the *Right Hand*, then it is but Changing your *Bridle-Hand* into your *Right Hand*, and the *Left Cavexone's Reyn* in your *Left Hand*, and pull it Hard, on the Inside, to you, and your outward *Legg*; and make him do as much on the *Left Hand*, *Legg* and *Reyn* Contrary; and if he do not Obey the *Heel*, give him the *Spurr* with your outward *Legg*. Continue this *Lesson* until you find him Obedient to your *Heels*: You may make him go *Byas* in an open Field, the same Way, with the same *Helps*.

OF THE
VOLTOES in PASSAGER.

WHEN he Obeys perfectly the *Heel*, upon this *Lesson* of *Byas* in *Passager*, then put him upon his *Voltoes*, or *Circles*, upon *Passager*, pulling the inward *Cavezone's* *Reyn* on the Inside of his *Neck*, hard to you, to bring in his outward *Shoulder*; and your *Contrary Legg*, *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary, bending his *Neck* extreamly; and if he do not Obey the *Heel*, give him the *Spurr* with your outward *Legg*, and then do as much on the other *Hand*; and when you find him very Obedient, upon *Passager*, a little *Large*, his *Croup* In, which puts him upon the *Hanches*; Because his *Croup* is In, and because it is upon the *Action* of a *Trott*, and the *Less Circle*, he is alwayes the most *Prest*, and therefore upon the *Hanches*.

I say, When he is perfectly Obedient to your *Hand* and *Heels*, upon his *Voltoes* somewhat *Large*, then make him go upon his *Passager*, in little
more

of Dressing Horses. 225

more than his Length; and if he be Obedient to your *Hand* and *Heel* there, on both Hands, he is Advanced very Far towards a *Ready-Horse*: For, if a Horse Obey my *Hand* and *Heel* upon *Passager*, which is a gentle Motion, and therefore proper to Learn a Horse, because it makes him Patient, and fortifies his Memory the Better. I say, if he be Obedient to me upon this Action, which is the Quintessence of Dressing Horses, then I can make him do Any thing, that his Forces will permit him.

When the Horse is Perfect in the aforesaid Lessons, then put him upon his *Voltoes*, his *Croup* In; upon *Le petit Gallop*, thus: Pull the Inward *Cavazone's* Reyn hard to you on the Inside of his Neck, and your outward *Legg* to Help him, Poyssing more on the outward *Stirrup*, than on the Inward; and Bend his Neck extreamly, that he may be Prest on the Out-side of the *Turn*, which is proper for *Le petit Gallop bis Croup In*; and Help him with your *Tongue*, and he will go presently very Perfectly; and giving him good Stops, he is advanced very far towards a *Ready-*

Mmm *Horse.*

226 The New Method

Horse. There is no Difference here between *Le petit Gallop*, and *Terra a terra*.

When your Horse Obeys all these *Lessons* perfectly; which is, To obey your *Hand*, and the *Heels*, Teach him to Advance; which is, to Rise *Before*; without which no Horse can be a *Ready-Horse*: You may do it when you Stop him, or upon Large Circles, staying him upon the *Hand*, helping him with your *Tongue*, and your *Leggs*, and *Rodd*, if there be cause; and put him Forward still after it, and *Raise* him again. But if he *Rises* of himself, put him Forward, and let him not *Rise*, but when you would have him; and he will very soon Obey you.

When he *Rises* perfectly (when you would have him) upon Large Circles, then put his *Croup* In upon his *Voltoes*, and *Raise* him so; and then Feel him upon the *Hand*, and Stay him a little when he is Up; and this will both put him upon the *Hand*, and upon the *Hanches*.

Why I would not have you *Raise* him before now, was, Because it would Disorder his *Mouth*, and put him Off of the *Hand*, and make him *Resty*;
for

of Dressing Horses. 227

for many Horses Rises *Restily*, because they would not go Forward, nor Turn; for, until they *Obey* the *Hand*, and *Fly* the *Heel*, there is no Raising of them.

I would have you always begin upon Large Circles his *Croup* Out, and then put In his *Croup* afterward; and so End.

When the Horse is perfect in all these former Lessons, then I would have you Tie the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* hard to the *Pommel*, and Work him upon all former Lessons so, with the inward *Reyn*, and inward *Legg*; and the outward *Reyn*, if need be, his *Croup* Out. Upon Large Circles, his *Croup* In, the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* Tied to the *Pommel*, and Help'd with the ^{out}ward *Reyn* of the *Bridle*, to press him on the ⁱⁿside of the *Turn*, for *Passager*: But when you Raise him in *Passadoes*, then the inward *Reyn*; when the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* is Tied to the *Pommel*, then you Work most on the *Bitt*; for you have nothing else in your *Hand*.

To Help, with the *Bridle* alone, upon Large Circles, his *Croup* Out, inward *Reyn*, and inward

Mmm 2 Legg,

Legg; or outward *Reyn* and inward *Legg*, if his *Shoulders* come not In enough; but upon *Passager*, with the *Bridle* alone, the inward *Reyn*, and outward *Legg*, for the Reasons I have told you.

It is an Excellent Lesson to *Gallop* a Horse forth Right, and to Stop him, and to Raise him only with the *Bit*, and then to Turn him, helping with the outward *Reyn*, which will prepare him for *Passadoes*; of which we will Talk hereafter.

There is an Excellent Lesson, the inward *Cavazone's Reyn* Tied to the *Pommel*, which is this: To *Gallop D'une file* a Narrow Circle, and so Four of them, and still put him Forward to take the other Circle; and afterward to do the same upon every Circle, his *Group* in, *Le petit Gallop*, or *Terra a terra*; and put him Forward to take the next Circle, and so as often as you think good to Repeat all the Four: And this makes him Attend the *Hand* and the *Heel*, and most Obedient to both.

The inward *Reyn* puts the Horse on the Outside, indeed all his Body, and Leans on his outward

of Dressing Horses. 229

ward *Hinder-Legg*, and Weighs his *Fore-Parts* up; and therefore on the *Hanches*.

The outward *Reyn* puts the Horse on the Inside, and Weighs him down; and therefore on the *Shoulders*.

You must have a Method to be often Repeated in all these good and Excellent Lessons; Lesson after Lesson, or else you will never Dress any Horse perfectly for *Terra a Terra*.

Needful

OBSERVATIONS.

Naturally whensoever a Horse's *Shoulders* come In, his *Croup* goes out; and when his *Croup* is put In too much, his *Shoulders* go out. As for Example; Upon Large Circles his *Shoulders* come In, his *Croup* goes out; and when his *Head* is as to the Pillar, (*Legg* and *Reyn* of a side) his *Shoulders* come In, and his *Croup* goes out: Nay, in the right *Terra a terra*, his *Shoulders* going before,

Nnn his

his *Croup* fluns the Center, which is a little out, though you think his *Croup* is In.

But you will say, How is it then in *Passager* when his *Croup* is In? I say, that is another Action than a *Gallop*, or *Terra a terra*; because then he is upon the Action of a *Trott*, which is Cross, and may better admit to be Prest within the *Turn*, and his *Leggs* at Liberty without the *Turn*; but yet (if his *Shoulders* go before his *Croup*, and is *Byes* as he ought to be, in respect of his *Shoulders*) his *Croup* is a little Out.

But now for *Le petit Gallop*, or *Terra a terra*; if his *Croup* be In, and you pull in his outward *Shoulder*, at the same time, it is a great Force, and Unnatural, so as the Horse goes Cross with his *Leggs*, and can go no otherwise, and is prest on the Inside. It is True, it puts the Horse upon the *Hand*, and so of necessity upon the *Shoulders*, and gives him an *Apy*, which all the former Lessons do; so that his *Croup* In needs it not, and besides, it is False.

For *Terra a terra*, He should be Prest on the Outside, to have his *Leggs* at Liberty within to Lead;

Lead; and that they call *Le petit Gallop*, if his *Croup* be In, which is indeed *Le petit Terra a terra*: For being Prest on the Inside, his *Croup* In, it is hard to go, because he is Bound up; and it is unnatural, both to bring In his outward *Shoulder*, and to put In his *Croup* at the same time.

To Prest him on the Inside, and to go on the Inside, his *Croup* In, is a great Pressure, and False; for indeed, he is Prest for the other side, and would Look out of the *Turn*, did not the Inward *Cavezone's Reyn* keep In his *Head*; howsoever he is on the *Shoulders*, and his *Leggs* go Cross; that is, his inward *Fore-Legg* leads, and his outward *Hinder-Legg* follows, and continues so, and is False, and his *Croup* Bunches out: If his *Croup* goes before his *Shoulders*, his *Leggs* are Wide behind, and off of the *Hanches*, and therefore upon the *Shoulders*, and False, and goes Cross with his *Leggs*. That is, his inward *Fore-Legg* leads, and his outward *Hinder-Legg* follows, and continues so.

For the *Piroite*, his *Croup* goes a little out, though almost in a place; and therefore he ought

232 The New Method

to be Prest within the *Turn*; but he goes upon the *Shoulders*.

So upon *Demi-Voltoes* upon *P^essadoes*, which is but Half a *Terra a terra*, he ought to be Prest without the *Turn*, because it is *Terra a terra*; but his *Croup* is In a little, and is upon the *Hanches*.

To Work a

HORSE upon PASSAGER,

Either with

His Head to the Wall, or upon Circles; either with the Cavezone in your Hand, or the Cavezone Tied to the Pommel; or the Bridle-Reyns separated in both your Hands, or the Bridle only in your Left Hand.

U Pon *Passager*, the *Cavezone* in your *Hand*; pull the inward *Reyn* of the *Cavezone* hard within the *Turn*, to pull the *Horses* outward *Shoulder In*, and to Press him on the Inside, that
his

of Dressing Horses. 233

his outward *Leggs* may be at Liberty, to Lap over his inward *Leggs*; and Help him with your outward *Legg*, (*Legg* and *Reyn* contrary) and let the Horse go *Byas*.

Upon *Passager*, the *Cavezone's Reyns* in your *Hand* another Way, and that's this: Pull the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* Croſs his *Neck*, not too High, your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, and Help him, with the outward *Legg*, and *Reyn* contrary; and Bend your *Body* to be Concave within the *Turn*, which will Press him without the *Turn*, and give his *Leggs* Liberty within the *Turn*, to lap over his inward *Leggs*, but not so much, and let the Horse go *Byas*. By the way, this oblique Line, with the inward *Cavezone's Reyn*, if you press the Horse on the outside, will make him go Rarely upon *Terra a Terra*.

Upon *Passager*, the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* Tied to the *Pommel*, (having nothing in your *Hand* but the *Bridle* to Work withal) you may safely work with the outward *Reyn* of the *Bridle*, because the Horse cannot Look on the outside, and that because the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* being

Ooo Tied

234 The New Method

Tied to the *Pommel* pulls in his *Head* so much, and the outward *Reyn* will press him on the inside, which is proper for *Passager*, as I have told you: If you press the Horse on the outside, though the *Reyn* be Tied to the *Pommel*, he will go *Terra a Terra* Rarely, if he goes *Byas*.

Upon *Passager*, the *Bridle Reyns* separated in both your *Hands*, you must Help with the inward *Reyn*, to make him Look into the *Turn*; and Help also with the outward *Reyn*, to bring In his outward *Shoulder*, to press him within the *Turn*, for the Reasons I have told you: But if you press the Horse on the outside with the inward *Reyn*, he will go Rarely *Terra a Terra*.

Here you have all the Ways of Working a Horse upon *Passager*, and I insist the more upon it, because it is the Quintessence of Working Horses in the *Mannage*, and the *Elixir* in Horsemanship; for if a Horse Obeys me perfectly in *Passager*, being Obedient to my *Hand* and *Heels*, I will make him go *Terra a Terra*, or in any *Ayre* whatsoever most perfectly, or any thing that his Forces will permit him to do; and therefore Esteem

of Dressing Horses. 235

steem *Passager* above all things in the world for the *Mannage*, and for Raising the Horse in *P^{as}sades*, his *Croup* In, or *D'une piste*, or *Byas*, or his *Head* to the *Wall*; and for pulling him *Back*, and *Raising* of him. For these Rare things will not Fail to make a *Ready-Horse*, if they be Applied rightly.

A

GENERAL RULE.

W^Hatsoever Leads, Fore-parts, or Hinder-parts; that which still Leads, tends to the Center, and the other parts of the Horse flie the Center: For it is a General Rule, and true; That whatsoever is the greater Circle, before or behind, that which is the greatest Circle, is most Wrought; for it goes most Ground, and is at Liberty, whether it tends to the Center, or from it; and the Less Circle, most subjected, and prest: For, his *Head* to the Pillar (the Pillar on the out-

Ooo 2 side

side of his *Head*) his Fore-parts Lead, and therefore tend to the Center, and his Hinder-parts flie the Center; yet his Hinder-parts are most wrought, because it is the greater Circle, and therefore his Fore-parts more subjected, and upon them, which is upon the *Shoulders*; so the Horse's *Croup* to the Pillar, the Pillar on the Inside of his *Croup*, his *Croup* In, his Fore-parts Lead, and therefore tend to the Center, and his *Croup* flies the Center; but his Fore-parts are more Wrought, because it is the Larger Circle; and his Hinder-parts more subjected and prest, because it is the Narrower Circle; and so upon the *Hanches*; so in his Length the same; and upon *Passager*, he Laps his *Leggs* over but every Second time, because they are Cross, and upon the Action of a *Trott*.

MORE

MORE

OBSERVATIONS.

IF a Horse goes Forward too much, pull him Back; if he goes Back, put him Forward; if he goes Side-ways on the *Right-Hand*, put him Side-ways on the *Left-Hand*; if he goes Side-ways on the *Left-Hand*, put him Side-ways on the *Right-Hand*. If he puts Out his *Croup*, put it In; if he puts In his *Croup*, put it Out. If he goes on the *Shoulders*, stop him, and pull him Back; if he goes on the *Hanches*, continue him so; if he Rises when you would not have him, keep him Down. All this upon a *Walk*; for thus he must Attend both your *Hand* and your *Heel*, and follow your Will, and so of Necessity must Obey you, because thus he is put from his Will, to Yours. And this must make him a perfect Horse; It is a most Excellent Lesson.

Never put a Horse upon any *Ayre*, nor

Ppp Pres

Press him much, until you find him very Sensible, and Obedient, both to your *Hand*, and to your *Heel*; and extreamly Supple: But Young Horses must never be much Press'd, nor Stopt too hard; for if you do, you will give them such a Crick, and Taint in their *Back*, as they will never Recover it.

The Horse's *Head* to the Pillar, (or an Imaginary Center) the Pillar without his *Head*; and the Horse's *Croup* to the Pillar, the Pillar on the inside of his *Croup*. And thus the Horse shall never be *Entier*.

I never Work a Horse's *Head* to the Pillar, (*Legg* and *Reyn* contrary;) because his inward *Hinder-Legg* goes so much before his *Shoulder*, which is False; but *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side, as I shewed you before.

To Work a Horse upon Quarters, is to no purpose; for, it Confounds a Horse more, than a whole Circle; but upon *Demy-Voltoes*, or half Turns, is very good sometimes.

To put a Horse *Byas* on one *Hand*, and then put him Forward; and then put him *Byas* on the other

of Dressing Horses. 239

other *Hand*, and then put him Forward; and so from *Hand* to *Hand*; and Forward, makes him Attend, and Obey both the *Hand*, and the *Heel*, and is an Excellent Lesson: But, as you put him *Byas*, his Fore-parts must alwayes go before his Hinder-parts.

There is no Lesson comparable to *Passager*, his *Croup* In, to make him Obey the *Hand*, and the *Heel*; and to Raise him in *Pasadoes*, and *Passager* him again, still *Raising* and *Passager*; and if you find he is not upon the *Hanches*, then *Walk*, or *Trott* him upon Large Circles, and Stop him Hard, and Raise him. All these Lessons are upon a *Walk*, and *Passager*; therefore you may see what a Rare thing *Walking*, and *Passager* is, to Make, and Dress all Horses perfectly.

Nay, when a Horse is a perfect Drest Horse, you must not make him go above Once a Week at the most, but Work him every Day upon his *Trott*, *Gallop*, *Passager*, *Raising* of him, and *Tuning* of him Thus, and with the *Ca-verzone*, he will go Rarely, when you would

Ppp 2 make

240 The New Method

make him go upon any *Ayre*, or *Terra a Terra*. I say, a Horſe is thus to be *Tuned*; for, a Horſe having *Four Leggs*, is like a Fiddle of *Four Strings*; and if a Fiddle be not *Tuned*, the *Muſician* can never Play *Salengers Round* upon it: So, if a Horſe's *Leggs* be not rightly *Tuned*, he will never *Dance his Round* right.

Again, if you alwayes Play upon a Fiddle, though *Well-Tuned* at the firſt, it will ſoon be out of *Tune* by continual *Playing* on it; ſo a *Ready-Horſe*, if you make him go perpetually, he will be ſoon out of *Tune*; and therefore you muſt *Tune* him ſtill, as I have told you.

THE JUST & EXACT WAY FOR *TERRA A TERRA.*

TO go upon a Square for *Terra a Terra*, is Good, but not the Beſt Way; for, it conſtrains

of Dressing Horses. 241

strains a Horse too much; so that he cannot go with that Freedom that he should; and is in great Danger, that his Inward *Hinder-Legg* will go before his *Shoulder*, and then it would be very False: therefore the True, Easie, and Best way is this that follows.

You must Sit Straight in the *Saddle*, the poise on the outward *Stirrup*, but not to Lean down upon it too much; but only the outward *Legg* is to be a little Longer than the inward *Legg*; and the inward *Legg* to be a little Before it, but very little; and Sit you must all upon the *Twist*, and *Stirrups*, and as Forward to the *Pommel* as you can; the outward *Legg* close to the Horse, and the *Knee* turned inwards, and Stiff in the *Ham*, to bring the Calf of the *Legg* to the Horse. Then for the *Bridle-Hand*; on the *Right-Hand* put your *Hand* on the outside of his *Neck*, or turn the *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, pulling your little *Finger* up straight without turning your *Hand*, which pulls the inward *Reyn* lying above your little *Finger*, your *Arm* a little from your *Body* oblique, your *Left Shoulder* coming a little

Qq In,

242 The New Method

In, and your *Nock* behind, removed a little on the Left side, and your *Buttons* a little on the Right side: This makes the Horse necessarily to go *Byas*. But now I must tell you where you must Look, or Turn your *Head*; which must be on the inside of the *Turn*, to the Inside of the Horse's *Head*, which keeps your *Hand* steady; for did you Look to your inward *Shoulder*, it would remove your *Bridle-Hand* too much within the *Turn*; and did you Look just between the Horse's *Ears*, your outward *Shoulder* would not come In enough; and neither it, nor you, nor the Horse would be oblique; your *Hand* must go Circularly with the Horse, and Steadily; and but to feel him.

Thus the Horse being *Byas*, the inward *Reyn* pull'd thus, enlarges the Horse before, in pulling his inward *Fore-Legg*, from the outward *Fore-Legg*; which puts his inward *Hinder-Legg* to his outward *Hinder-Legg*, which Narrows him Behind, makes him Bow in the *Gambrels*, especially on his outward *Hinder-Legg*, which he Rests on, and Thrusts his inward *Hinder-Legg* under his
Belly;

of Dressing Horses. 243

Belly; which (with all these things) makes him very much upon the *Hanches*; the Horse is prest on the outside, and therefore of necessity must Look within the *Turn*, and his Fore-parts being Enlarged, must embrace the *Turn* the better; his *Hinder-Leggs* being within the Lines of his *Fore-Leggs*, he must needs be upon the *Hanches*; and his Inward *Fore-Legg* being pull'd from his outward *Fore-Legg*, (being *Circular*) his inward *Fore-Legg* of necessity must be Longer than his outward *Fore-Legg* to Lead, which is Right, and so makes the Largest Circle; and his outward *Fore-Legg* the Second Circle; and his inward *Hinder-Legg* the Third Circle; because it is thrust so much before his outward *Hinder-Legg*, and under his *Belley*; and his outward *Hinder-Legg* makes the Fourth and Least Circle, because he Rests so much upon it, and Bows in the *Gambrels*. Thus the Horse makes Four perfect Circles, about the Pillar, or Center, as I have Told you, and given you the Reasons of it.

Thus doth the Horses Fore-parts go always before his Hinder-parts; that is, half his *Shoulders*

Q q q 2 within

244 The New Method

within the *Turn*, before his half *Group* within the *Turn*; which is his *Fore-Legg* within the *Turn*, before his *Hinder-Legg* within the *Turn*: And thus the Horse can never go False, but most exactly True, with *Head*, *Neck*, *Body*, *Leggs*, and all.

For the *Left-Hand*, every thing must be as for the *Right*, and the same way, changing *Hand*, *Body*, and *Legg*; only for the *Bridle Hand*, it is necessary, That when you go on the *Left-Hand*, you should put your *Hand* on the contrary side of his *Neck*; your *Arm* close to your *Body*, and the *Knuckles* of your *Bridle-Hand* turned towards his *Neck*, which pulls the inward *Reyn* for the *Left-Hand*; because that *Reyn* lies under your little *Finger*; and this makes you Oblike, and the Horse Oblike: And every thing for the *Left Hand* works as truly, in all those several things, as I told you for the *Right-Hand*.

And thus the Horse is within your *Hand*, and your *Heel*; and so you Drive him, and make him go as you List; Slower, or Faster; Higher, or Lower: But remember, That your *Hand* be not

of Dressing Horses. 245

too High, but that the Horse may go Low, and Prest; for if your *Hand* be Low, the Horse goes Low; and if your *Hand* be High, the Horse goes High: For the Horse always goes according to the heighth of the *Hand*; and *Terra a Terra* should always be Low, and Prest.

Now I must tell you, That the inward *Reyn* Presses the Horse on the outside, Weighs him up, and puts him upon the *Hanches*, especially on his outward *Hinder-Legg*, so that all his *Body* Leans on the outside, and he cannot bring In his outward *Shoulder*; for it is Bound up, and his *Leggs* within the *Turn* to Lead: You may know by his *Neck*, whether he Leans on the Outside or no; for if he does, his *Neck* will Lean all on the Outside, and your *Body* must be Concave on the outside, and Convex within; for being Concave on the Outside, makes the Horse so, and puts In his *Hanch*, (being Prest on the Outside) and hath three *Leggs* in the *Ayre*, his two *Fore-Leggs*, and his inward *Hinder-Legg*, with a Leap forward Low, and Prest. And this is most Exactly the truth for *Terra a terra*, and all the de-

R r r licate

246 The New Method

licate and subtil Helps that can be for it in the World.

OF
C H A N G I N G
UPON
T E R R A A T E R R A.

YOur *Eody* is to be Oblike, your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*, and on the Outside of his *Neck*, on which *Hand* soever you go; and as he is going *Terra a Terra* on the *Right Hand*, let his *Shoulders* come In a little before you Change him, and then Help him with your *Right Legg*, and hold him Up with your *Hand*, and on the outside of his *Neck*, which is now Changed to the Left side. Why his *Shoulders* are to come In, a little before you Change him, is, To fix his *Croup* that it should not go out; and so the *Hand* on the contrary side of the *Turn*, for the same Reason; and put him always a little forward upon every Change.

Now

of Dressing Horses. 247

Now you are on the *Left-Hand*, before you Change him, let his *Shoulders* come In a little to Fix his *Croup*, and then Help him with the *Left-Legg*, and put him Forward a little, and then hold him Up with your *Hand*, and on the Outside of his *Neck*, on the Left side. I begin with my *Legg* to Change him, for the same Reasons I told you: But you must Remember, to be Stiff in the *Hams*, and your *Heels* down, to bring the Calf of the *Leggs* to him; and the same for *Demy-Voltoes*. And this is Exactly the truth for Changing upon *Terra a Terra*.

OF CHANGING UPON

Demy-Voltoes, Terra a Terra.

U Pon *Demy-Voltoes*, your *Hand* on the outside, your outward *Legg* close to him, you Sit Oblike, the *Knuckles* of your *Bridle-
Rrr 2 Hand*

248 The New Method

Hand towards his *Neck*; and when he makes his *Demi-Voltæ*, let him go a little more than half a Turn, to fix his *Croup* before you Change him; and when you do Change him, Help him with the inward *Legg* first, and then hold him Up with your *Hand*, and a little on the outside of his *Neck*: This from the *Wall* is best, but by a *Wall* it cannot be; for you cannot go through the *Wall*, and therefore by a *Wall* it can be but a just Half Turn, or *Demy-Voltæ*, which you may either Help with the inward, or outward *Reyn* at your own Pleasure, so you keep his *Croup* to the *Wall*, that he may keep the Line, and not Falsify the *Demy-Voltæ*. This may be done with either *Reyn*, so it be done with Art, and Skill, like a Great Master; for otherwise nothing is Right in the *Mannage*.

OF
GALLOPING,
AND

Changing En Soldat.

With the outward *Reyn*, and the outward *Legg*, put him alwayes Forward; If his *Croup* goes out too much, then your *Bridle* on the outside of the *Turn*, or of his *Neck*, to Help with the inward *Reyn*, to keep In his *Croup*, otherwise not, but Help with the outward *Reyn*, and outward *Legg*. Thus much for Changing upon Circles *D'une piste*, which must alwayes be either Half a *Turn*, or a Quarter of a *Turn*, *Terra a terra*.

T O
PREPARE A HORSE
FOR
P A S S A D O E S.

First Walk him Fore-right, either by a *Wall*, *Hedge*, or otherwise, and at the end Stop him, and Raise him two or three *Passadoes*, and then Turn him gently, Helping with the outward *Reyn*, and outward *Legg*, and see that he doth not Falsify his *Demy-Voltoe*, upon *Passager*, either in his *Shoulders*, or his *Croup*; but both to be Just, when he is Turned.

Do as much on the other *Hand*, and then *Trott* him upon the Straight Line; Stop him, Advance him, and Turn him as you did before; and when he is Perfect in this, then *Gallop* him *Le petit Gallop*, upon the Straight Line; Stop him, Advance him: But now let him go a *Demy-Voltoe* upon his *Ayre*, and when he is Perfect in this, then let him make a *Passado*, upon *Le petit Gallop*, with-

of Dressing Horses. 251

without Stopping, or Advancing, which he will do perfectly; but you must put his *Head* a little from the *Wall*, that his *Croup* may be to the *Wall*, to keep the *Line*, that he may not Falsify his *Demy-Voltoe*; and before he Turns, to make two or three Falcadoes, to firm his *Hanches* the better, to Turn with the better Grace: If you would Run him *A toute Bride*, keep his *Head* a little from the *Wall*, to keep his *Croup* to it, slacking the *Reyns* a little, and pressing him with your *Leggs*, and to make two or three little Falcadoes before you Turn him, and then close him with your outward *Reyn*, and outward *Legg*, for the *Demy-Voltoe*; and so on the other *Hand* the same for the *Passadoe*, some Five times the Horses Length. And thus the Horse will go perfectly in *Passadoes*, which is the Touch-Stone of a Ready-Horse, obeying *Hand* and *Heel* in every thing.

If your Horse go in *Corvets*, or a *Demy-Ayre*, then make his *Demy-Voltoes* upon his *Passadoes*, upon his *Ayre*, which is very Graceful. The *French* calls this *Passadoe*, *Releve*; which methinks, is not a proper Term for it: A *Demy-*

Sff 2 *Voltoe*

252 The New Method

Voltoe must be Helpt in all Kinds like *Terra a Terra*, for 'tis but a half a Turn *Terra a Terra*; that is, the inward *Reyn*, and outward *Legg*, and your *Body*, and every thing like *Terra a Terra*.

Of the *P I R O Y T E*.

THE Action of the Horse's *Leggs* in the *Piroyte*, is very Strange; your *Hand* on the outside of his *Neck* to Look into the *Turn*, and working Violently with the outward *Reyn* of the *Bridle*, Straightens his Fore-parts, and puts his Hinder-parts at more Liberty, helping with no *Legg*; so the Action of his *Leggs* are thus: On the *Right-Hand*, when he lifts up both his *Fore-Leggs* at the same time, he lifts up his *Hinder-Legg* without the *Turn*; so he hath three *Leggs* up at a time, and Rests only on the inward *Hinder-Legg*;
and

of Dressing Horses. 253

and when those three *Leggs* come to the Ground, his outward *Shoulder* coming In so Fast, his inward *Hinder Legg* removes at the same time almost in a Place, to keep the Circle; and I say, that at the same time those three *Leggs* are set Down, his inward *Hinder-Legg* removes, to go along with the Circle; but in a manner in a Place: So that indeed the inward *Hinder-Legg* is the Center, though it removes in the place Round; and when the Horse is so Dizzey as he can go no Longer, (for fear of Falling) then he sets his inward *Hinder-Legg* forward, to Stop himself.

These are Exactly the Helps, and the Motions of the Horses *Leggs* in the *Piroyte*, or else he could not go so Swiftly as he Ought: He is upon the *Shoulders*, because he is Prest on the Inside; so is a *P^{re}ssadie*, being but Half a *Piroyte*, because both of them is Helpt with the outward *Reyn*.

One of the
GREATEST SECRETS

The MANNAGE that ever I found out.

THe inward *Hinder-Legg* to the *Turn* always put Out a little, Is in all things the Quintessence of the *Mannage*, whether his *Croup* Out, or In; the *Knuckles* of the *Bridle-Hand* towards his *Neck*, his *Croup* In, doth well in *Terra a Terra*; and always your Horse to go *Byas*, upon his *Voltoes*, or his *Head* to the *Wall*, doth it Best; for his *Shoulders* going before, his *Hinder-parts* put out his inward *Hinder-Legg*, which is the greatest Business in the *Mannage*; for so his *Hinder-Leggs* are near together, and so upon the *Hanches*.

The inward *Reyn* of the *Bridle* doth it, pull'd, as I have told you, and so doth the inward *Reyn* of the *Cavezone*; for it puts out his inward *Hinder-Legg*, Narrows him behind, and Inlarges him before; because it pulls his inward *Fore-Legg* from
his

of Dressing Horses. 255

his outward *Fore-Legg*, and therefore Inlarges him before; and at the same time, it puts his inward *Hinder-Legg* out, to his outward *Hinder-Legg*; and therefore Narrows him behind, and so must of necessity be upon the *Hanches*.

And thus his inward *Fore-Legg* must always be before his inward *Hinder-Legg*, so that half his *Shoulders* goes always before half his *Croup*, by which means he can never go False; and his Fore parts always Imbracing the *Turn* the better, and the outward *Hinder-Legg* being kept In a little, with your outward *Legg*, makes his two *Hinder-Leggs* within the Lines of his *Fore-Leggs*, which makes him upon the *Hanches*, and his Fore-parts to Lead, as Horses always should do: For, they do not ~~Work~~^{move} with their *Arses* first, but with their *Heads*, and Fore-parts.

Remember, That no Horse can be upon the *Hanches*, but those that Bend in the *Gambrels*, and Bow there; and the more their *Hinder-Leggs* go under their *Belley*, the more they Bow in the *Gambrels*. Remember also as a certain Truth, That no Horse can be upon the *Hanches*, except

256 The New Method

his *Croup*, or *Buttock*, be thrust out Backwards: As for Example; When you give a Horse a good Stop, his *Hinder-Leggs* go under his *Belly*, and his *Croup*, or *Buttocks*, are thrust out; he Bows in the *Gambrels*, and so is upon the *Hanches*: When he goes *Le petit Gallop*, his *Croup* In, his *Hinder-Leggs* are thrust under his *Belly*, then his *Croup* goes out; he Bows in the *Gambrels*, and is upon the *Hanches*: So in *Terra a Terra*, his *Hinder-Leggs* are thrust under his *Belly*, and his *Croup* goes out; he Bows in the *Gambrels*, and is upon the *Hanches*.

When you pull a Horse Back, one of his *Hinder-Leggs* goes always under his *Belly*; he puts out his *Croup*, bends in the *Gambrels*, and is upon the *Hanches*: So in *Paffades* his *Croup* is thrust out, he Bows in the *Gambrels*, and is upon the *Hanches*; but if he be Raised too High, it puts him off of the *Hanches*, for then he is Stiff in the *Gambrels*, because his *Croup* goes In; which puts him upon the *Hand*, but off of the *Hanches*: Therefore you must never Raise him too High in *Paffades*; if his *Croup* must go out, be
Bow'd

of Dressing Horses. 257

Bow'd in the *Gambrels*, and so be upon the *Hanches*.

My Way, at the Single Pillar in *Corvets*, puts out his *Croup*, makes him Bow in the *Gambrels*, and so to be upon the *Hanches*, because he cannot Rise High, and therefore puts out his *Croup*, and is upon the *Hanches*; so all that puts a Horse upon the *Hanches*, is before, either with the *Cavezone's Reyn*, or *Bitt*, and nothing behind.

The inward *Hinder-Legg*, and inward *Cavezone's Reyn*, is the Quintessence of the *Mannage*, with thrusting his *Croup* out, which makes him Bow in the *Gambrels*, and so be upon the *Hanches*; which is the End of all our Work and Business in the *Mannage*. I do not mean his *Croup* to be put out in a Circle, or put out upon a Straight Line; but be thrust out Backwards, and then he is upon the *Hanches*, because he Bows in in the *Gambrels*.

I must Remember you again, that to put him on the *Hanches*, is all Before; so that when his *Head* is pull'd Down, and In, then he is upon

Uuu the

258 The New Method

the *Hanches*; for his *Croup* goes out, and he Bow in the *Gambrels*, and therefore is upon the *Hanches*: That is, the Horse must be a little Higher behind than before; for then his *Croup* goes out, and he Bows in the *Gambrels*, and therefore is upon the *Hanches*. As for Example; A Horse goes down a Hill, then his *Croup* is Higher than his Fore-parts, and his *Croup* goes out, and then he bows in the *Gambrels*, and is extremely upon the *Hanches*.

So if he be turned in the *Stable*, his *Croup* is Higher than his Fore-parts, and puts his *Croup* out, bends in the *Gambrels*, and therefore is very much upon the *Hanches*. So in plain Ground, where there is no Hills, you must Supply it, with pulling his Head Down, and In, as much as you can, to make him Higher behind, than before, which puts out his *Croup*, makes him bow in the *Gambrels*, and puts him upon the *Hanches*; as Stopping of him, pulling Back, *Passager*, *Le petit Gallop*, and *Terra a Terra*: All these pulls him Down, and puts out his *Croup*, which puts him upon the *Hanches*.

If

of Dressing Horses. 259

If the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* be Tied to the *Pommel*, or pull'd Hard in your *Hand*, it puts him upon the *Hanches*, because it puts his inward *Hinder-Legg* out to his outward *Hinder-Legg*, that it shall not come In too much, nor at all; and that puts him upon the *Hanches*; so in *Passadoes*, or *Corvets*, the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* tied to the *Pommel*, puts the inward *Legg* out, which puts him upon the *Hanches*, because it thrusts his *Croup* out: But when you have nothing but the *Bridle*, What then? Then the Inward *Reyn* of the *Bridle* doth the same in all things; but *Passager* his *Croup* In, is with the outward *Reyn*, because it is the Action of a *Trott*, which is Cross, and so it will suffer it, because his *Leggs* are *Byas*; so it is right for *Passager*, to be Prest within the *Turn*, and at Liberty without the *Turn*, or else his outward *Leggs* could not Lap over his inward *Leggs*: But if you have nothing but the *Bridle*, he will Look out of the *Turn*, if you do not Help with both *Reyns*; but whensoever you Raise him in *Passadoes*, his *Croup* In, or Out, you must Help with the inward *Reyn*, to put out his inward *Hinder-*

Uuu 2 *Legg*,

260 The New Method

Legg, which makes him Bow in the *Gambrels*, because his *Hinder-Leggs* are made like our *Arms*, and therefore must Bow in the *Gambrels*, if it be thrust out.

But I must tell you for a great Truth, That whensoever, upon Large Circles *D'une piste*, the Horse's inward *Hinder-Legg* is put out, and bows, it puts him not upon the *Hanches*, but very much upon the *Shoulders*; for the more his *Buttock* doth go out, the more still he is upon the *Shoulders*; for that Lesson is not to put him upon the *Hanches*, but to Supple his *Shoulders*; for if you would put him upon the *Hanches*, you must put In his *Croup*; for the Larger Circle is wrought most, because it goes the most Ground; yet his *Hinder-parts* are the most prest, because in the Narrower Circle, and therefore upon the *Hanches*.

Some are of Opinion, That the more you put In his *Croup*, the more he is on the *Hanches*; which I do not Think, because his inward *Hinder-Legg* goes before half his *Shoulder*, and so he is Wide behind, and off of the *Hanches*, and goes
Back-

of Dressing Horses. 261

Backward: But if his *Croup* be In, and you put out his inward *Hinder-Legg*, then he bows in the *Gambrels*, his *Hinder-Leggs* Narrow behind, and \circ upon the *Hanches*; and the more upon the *Hanches*, if the Horse goes *Dyas*, because by that means the Horses *Hinder-Leggs* are nearer together, and so Narrower, and therefore upon the *Hanches*; and this is most true: For if the Horses *Hinder-Legg* (within the *Turn*) goes before his inward *Fore Legg*, he doth not only go Backward, but his inward *Hinder-Legg* is stiff in the *Gambrels*, and therefore not upon the *Hanches*; but when you put out his inward *Hinder-Legg*, then he Bows in the *Gambrels*, and therefore upon the *Hanches*, because his *Hinder-Leggs* are made like our *Armes*; only he hath a Joynt more, which is the Stifling-Joynt.

You see plainly, now, What an excellent, and most Rare thing it is, to keep a Horses inward *Hinder-Legg* out in all manner of things that are in the *Mannage*; and in whatsoever you Work him, it is the absolute Quintessence of the *Mannage*; and without it is nothing Right, but most

Xxx False,

262 The New Method

Falſe, becauſe of abundance of Irreparable Errors; whereas with it all things are Right, and moſt True.

This hath been Studied to the Purpoſe, and no Horſe but is perfectly Made with it, and all is to put his inward *Hinder-Legg* out in all things; and being put out thus, he muſt bow in the *Gambrels*, becauſe his *Hinder-Leggs* are made like our *Armes*. And this is that which none either Knows, or have Thought of; and therefore Mark it, Remember it, and Praſe it if you can; and if you cannot, do not find Fault with a thing, becauſe you cannot do it: For, certainly no Man is Born to all Profeſſions, by Inſpiration, but with great Study, Diligence, Care, Patience, and long Praſe: No Man being Born with ſo Supream a Witt above others, as to do (aſoon as he ſees it) any thing that hath been ſo many Years another Mans Study.

TO

To put a Horse
UPON the HANCHES:

On which

*I insist the More, because it is the End of all our
Work and Labour in the Mannage;*

For, Without it, no Horse can Possibly go Well.

A Horse can never go Well upon the *Hanches*, but his Fore-parts must be Wrought; for, in that Manner, when you Stop him, you pull his Fore-parts, and that puts him upon the *Hanches*, because you pull his Fore-parts Down, and In: When you pull him Back, you put him upon the *Hanches*, because you pull his Fore-parts Down, and In; When you make him go *Terra a Terra*; when you Work the Inward *Reyn*, on which *Hand* soever he goes, so you Press him on the outside, and put In his outward *Hanch*, then you put him upon the *Hanches*, because you pull him Down on the outside, with the Inward *Reyn* of the *Bridle*, on either *Hand*.

Xxx 2 So

264 The New Method

So (My Way) with the *Cavezone* Tied to the *Pommel*, or Tied to the *Girthes*, if he be Prest on the outside, and his outward *Hanch* put In, puts him upon the *Hanches*, because the *Cavezone* pulls Down his *Head*, and In. And believe me, The *Cavezone* thus, puts him more on the *Hanches*, than any thing; but if you Prest him on the Inside of the *Turn*, (though you do pull Down his *Head*) he is off of the *Hanches*, because his outward *Hanch* goes out, and therefore puts him on the *Shoulders*.

You see then, That whatsoever pulls a Horse *Head* Down, and In, puts him upon the *Hanches*; or that Naturally he puts his *Head* Down. As for Example; a Horse that goes *In Caputatio*; which is, To Arm himself against the *Bitt*, is easily put upon the *Hanches*; and being upon the *Hanches*, he is Light of the *Hand*.

To Strike a Horse on the *Knees* with your *Rodd*, when he Rises before, pulls him Down, and In, and therefore puts him upon the *Hanches*. There is no Horse that holds Up his *Head*, but he is off of the *Hanches*; nor any Horse that
Rises

of Dressing Horses. 265

Rises High before, but is off of the *Hanches*; nor any Horse in *Terra a Terra*, when his *Head* is pull'd Down, and In, but goes on the *Hanches*, if he be Rid as he Ought to be. The Reason is this; No Horse can go on the *Hanches*, that doth not Bow in the *Gambrels*, or *Hinder-Houghs*: Whensoever a Horse Rises High before, he is Stiff in the *Gambrels* of necessity, and therefore off of the *Hanches*; nor doth a Horse hold Up his *Head* very High, but it Stiffens his *Gambrels*, and therefore off of the *Hanches*; nor can any Horse go Low before, but of necessity he must Bend in the *Gambrels*, either going Down a *Hill*, or Turn'd in the *Stable*, which makes his *Hinder-parts* Higher than his *Fore-parts*; but he must Bend in the *Gambrels*, and therefore must be upon the *Hanches*, and so his *Croup* In: But if his *Croup* be out, he is upon the *Shoulders*, though his *Head* be Down.

So many a Horse (as also Hunting and Travelling Geldings) go horribly upon the *Shoulders*, though their *Heads* be Down; but indeed they are all upon the *Shoulders* except in the *Mannage*. For Example; A Horses *Fore-Legs* are made like our *Legs*, the *Knees*

Yyy outward;

266 The New Method

outword; but a Horſes *Hinder-Leggs* are made like our *Arms*, juſt contrary: So that whenſoever a Horſe is Raiſed High before, it Stiffens him in the *Gambrels*; and when he holds Up his *Head*, it Stiffens him in the *Gambrels*. So on the contrary, whenſoever his *Head* is pull'd Down, of Neceſſity he muſt Bend in the *Gambrels*; for he cannot do otherwiſe, if he be Preſt, otherwiſe not.

I labour this Point the more, becauſe you ſhall clearly ſee what puts him on the *Hanches*, and what puts him off of the *Hanches*; that ſo you may Shun the one, and Take the other, which is, to put him on the *Hanches*, becauſe that is the End of all our Labour, and the Quinteſſence of our Art; for, without a Horſe be upon the *Hanches*, he can never be a Ready-Horſe, or Leight on the *Hand*; but there is no Rule without an Exception, and that is, you may pull Down a Horſes *Head*, and yet not upon the *Hanches*; which is, when you Work his *Shoulders D'une piſſe*, *Legg* and *Reyn* on the Inſide, though his *Head* be pull'd Down, he cannot be on the *Hanches*,

of Dressing Horses. 267

ches, because you put it out, and Press him on the Inside: No more when his *Croup* is In, if he be Prest on the Inside, his *Croup* goes out a little, and therefore cannot be upon the *Hanches*, though his *Head* be pull'd Down, because you put his *Hanch* out: This is good to give him an *Apy* upon the *Barrs*, and Supple his *Shoulders*; but it cannot put him on that which you put away, that were too great a Miracle, indeed an Impossibility.

Pulling Down his *Head*, and In, puts him upon the *Hanches*, at a Stop; and pulling Down his *Head*, and In, when you make him go Back, puts him upon the *Hanches*; and when you pull Down his *Head* and In, and Raise him, it puts him upon the *Hanches*; and when you Press him on the outside of the *Turn* in *Terra a Terra*, it puts him upon the *Hanches*; when you pull Down his *Head* and In, either with the *Carvezone*, or the *Bridle*; and so pulling Down his *Head*, and In, pressing him on the outside of the *Turn*, puts him upon the *Hanches* in *Terra a Terra*, or upon his *Walk* in *Passager*: And this (I am sure) is sufficient to put a Horse upon the *Hanches*,

Yyy 2 which

which is the *Elixir* of the *Mannage*, and is done when his *Head* is Down, and In, and Prest; that is, when you pull Down his *Head*, that you press him with the *Heels*, or *Leggs*, otherwise not; for, if a Horse holds Down his *Head* to Drink, he is not on the *Hanches*, for then he Bows rather Before, than Behind, and is on the *Shoulders*; therefore he must be prest; so if he holds Up his *Head*, it Works nothing on the *Hanches*, but the contrary.

A short *Trot* puts a Horse upon the *Hanches*, so a short *Trot D'une piste*, *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side, puts a Horse upon the *Hanches*, because his inward *Hinder-Legg* is put out; his *Head* to the *Wall* puts him upon the *Hanches*; and nothing puts him more on the *Hanches* than a Leight *Hand*; for when he hath nothing to Rest on Before, then he will rest Behind, which is upon the *Hanches*.

There are many Reasons why we Work a Horse so much, to put him upon the *Hanches*, which I have shewed you before; but there is one Reason more, and that is this: A Horse's *Group*,

or

of Dressing Horses. 269

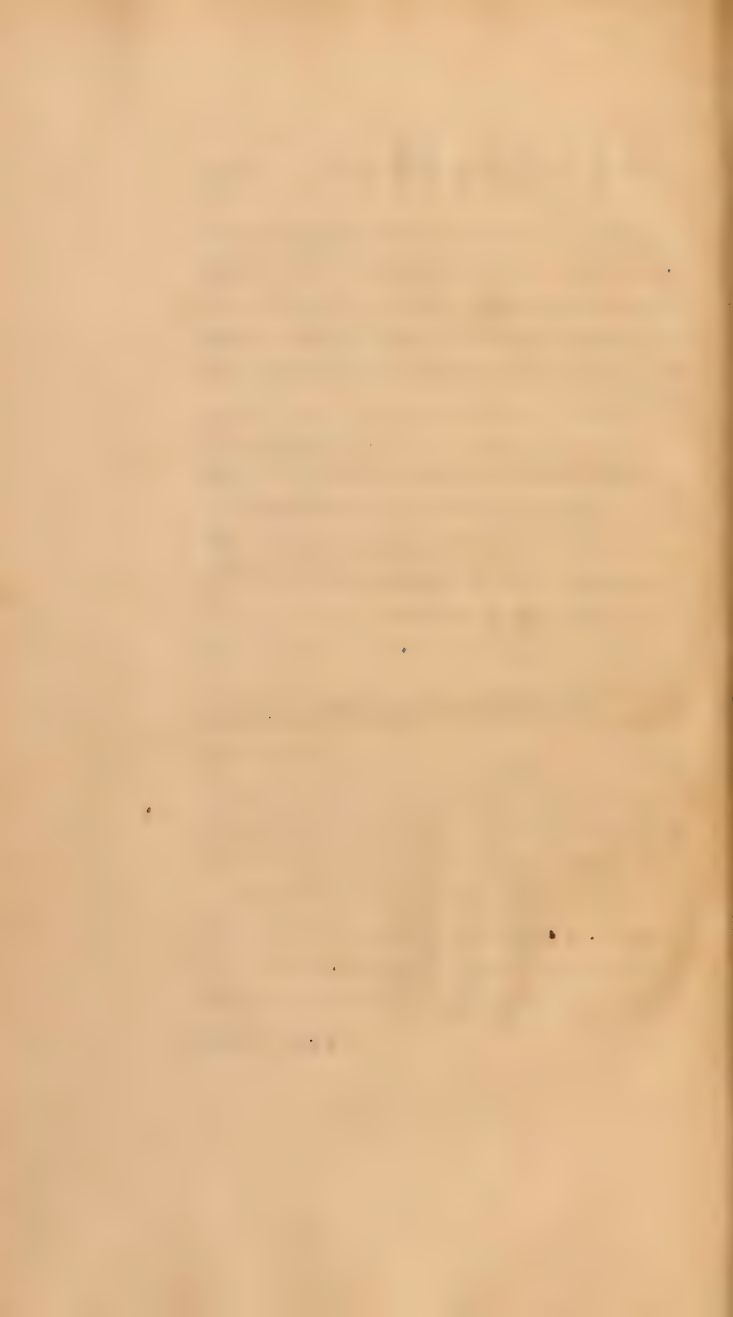
or *Hanches*, bears nothing but his *Tayl*, which is very Leight; but his *Shoulders* hath his *Neck* and *Head* to Bear, which is more; and therefore we put him upon the *Hanches*, to Poyse him, and to Relieve his *Shoulders*, and to make him Leight on the *Hand*.

Thus much for Dressing all manner of Horses upon the Ground, to make them Obey Perfectly both Hand and Heel, and to put them upon the Hanches, which is the Master-Piece of our Art.

Here Ends the Second Part.



Zzz THE





THE
THIRD PART,

For Dressing and Making of Horses in all

SEVERAL AYRES,
MY NEW WAY.



You must in all *Ayres* follow the Strength, Spirit, and Disposition of the Horse, and do nothing against *Nature*; for *Art* is but to set *Nature* in *Order*, and nothing else:

But to make a Horse *Gallop* and *Change*, and to go *Terra a Terra*, is for the most part Forced; and in *P^{ass}adoes* the like: For, if a Horse be Impatient, he will hardly go well in *P^{ass}adoes*.

No other *Ayres* are to be Forced, but every

Zzz 2 Horse

Horse is to Chuse his own *Ayre*, unto which *Nature* hath most Fitted him, which you may easily see, when he is Tied Short to the *Single Pillar* My Way.

For *Corvets*, a Horse ought to have a great deal of *Patience*: And the *Ayre* of *Corvets* gives a Horse *Patience* with Discreet *Riding*, (as they say) but I have seldom seen that Discreet *Riding*; I doubt there is a Mistake in it, which is this: First the Horse hath *Patience*, and then that Horse goes in *Corvets*; but seldom Impatient Horses are made Patient by *Corvets*: So seeing most Horses that go well in *Corvets*, to have *Patience*, they think *Corvets* gives them *Patience*, when it is *Patience* that gives them *Corvets*. But there is no Rule without an Exception, yet I doubt I am in the Right; for, though some Young Horse may (by Chance) go in *Corvets*, yet I assure you, for the most part, Horses must have a great deal of time, with the Custom of often Repetitions; to be in some Years, and to have *Gray-Hairs* in their *Beard*, before they will be Settled, and Firm'd, to go certainly in *Corvets*, both Forwards, and upon their
Voltoes;

of Dressing Horses. 273

Voltoes; therefore it is an Errour in those that think they can force *Corvets*, if the Horse's inclination be not to go in that *Ayre*; for I have known many Horses, that all the Force in the world would never make go in *Corvets*; their Disposition being against it: *Corvets* is an *Ayre*, built only of Art; for if the Horse be not perfectly in the *Hand* and the *Heels*, and upon the *Hanches*, he will never go in *Corvets*: Yet I must Tell you, This *New Way* of Mine will make Horses go in *Corvets*, which by no other Way would have been brought to it, and it seldom or never Fails me.

For *Leaping* Horses, there are Four several *Ayres*, which are *Croupadoes*, *Balotadoes*, *Capriols*, and a *Pace and a Leap*; the Height of these may be all alike, but not the Manner; though the Horse that goes the Longest time, must needs go the Highest.

Croupadoes is a *Leap*, where the Horse pulls up his *Hinder-Leggs*, as if he drew, or pull'd them up into his *Body*.

Balotadoes is a *Leap* where the Horse offers
Aaaa to

to Strike out with his *Hinder-Leggs*, but doth not; and makes only an Offer, or Half strokes; shewing only the *Sbooes* of his *Hinder-Leggs*, but doth not Strike, only makes an Offer, and no more.

Capriols is a *Leap*, that when the Horse is at the full Heighth of his *Leap*, he Yerks, or Strikes out his *Hinder-Leggs*, as neer, and as ceven Together, and as far out as ever he can Stretch them; which the *French* call, *Nouer l'Esquillette*, which is, To tie the Point.

A *Pace* and a *Leap*, is, as it were three *Ayres*; the *Pace Terra a Terra*, the Raising of him a *Corvet*, and then a *Leap*: These *Ayres* can never be Forc't to go Well in them, in spite of their *Poynsors*, but what *Nature* ordains them; for, they are called, *Well-Dispos'd* Horses.

What belongs to *Leaping* Horses (according to the Old Opinion) are these things: A Horse of huge and vast *Strength*, an excellent *Mouth*, perfect good *Feet*; in which last they have not said Amiss, for good *Feet* are very Requisite, else the Horse dares never Leight on them, for fear

of

of Dressing Horses. 275

of Hurting them (no more than a Man that hath the *Gout*, dares *Leap*) and so will never Rise.

I could wish a good *Mouth*, (which is a good *Apy*) neither too Hard, nor too Soft, but to suffer a good *Apy* upon the *Barrs*, and so to suffer the *Curb*, which is to be understood a good *Mouth*: yet I must tell you, the rarest *Leaping* Horse that ever I saw, or Rid, went not at all upon the *Curb*, but only upon the *Barrs* of his *Mouth*, which I do not Commend; but it is better to have him *Leap* so, being so rare a Horse, than to be so Over-Curious as not to have him *Leap* at all, because he went not upon the *Curb*.

That they must be very Strong Horses to be *Leaping* Horses, is a very great Errour; for, it is not the Strongest Horses that is fittest for the Delight of the *Mannage*, and especially not for *Leaping* Horses; for I have seen many Strong Horses, that must be *Galloped* very long before you could Abate the strength of their *Chines*; and all that while they would do nothing but Yerk,

Aaaa 2 and

276 The New Method

and fetch disorder'd Counter-times of False *Leaps*, and the best Horse-men in the World could never make them *Leaping* Horses: So it is not Strong, but Well-dispos'd Horses; for the best *Leaping* Horses that ever I Knew, were the Weakest Horses I have seen.

Take one of the *Guard*, the Strongest Fellow that is, and I will bring a Little Fellow that shall *Out-Leap* him many a Foot; yet that Strong Fellow would Crush that Little Fellow to Death in his *Armes*: So 'tis not Strength, but Disposition fits Horses for *Leaping*. But some will say, That a little Man's Strength is above his Weight, and the great Man's Weight is above his Strength; but that is not so; for the great Man's Strength shall be more above his Weight, than the little Man's Strength above his, and yet the little Man shall *Out-Leap* him. Nay, two Little Men of Equal Strength, the one shall *Leap* excellently, and the other not; and more, a Weaker little man shall *Out-Leap* the Stronger, and sometimes a Weak slender slim Fellow will *Out-Leap* a Knit strong Fellow; so that it is nothing but Disposition,

of Dressing Horses. 277

sition, which *Nature* gives, and not *Art*: Sometimes a Strong great Fellow will *Out-Leap* a little Man, but that is seldom, because their Spirits are more Dilated, Assunder, and Diffused, than in little men: The like I will assure you in Horses, as I have told you of men; there may be a Strong Horse disposed for *Leaping*, and that no doubt is an Excellent Horse; but for the most part they are but Weak Horses, that are disposed for *Leaping*; sometimes a Horse finds himself so Pincht with *Corvets* upon the *Hanches*, being Weak, that he finds Ease in *Leaping*.

Thus you see, that *Leaping* Horses are disposed by *Nature*, and not *Art*, being full of Spirit, and Leight; so that Horse-men hath nothing to do in making *Leaping* Horses, but only to give them the time, which is all the *Art* ought to be used to a *Leaping* Horse; and he that thinks to shew more *Art* in a *Leaping* Horse, will but shew his Ignorance and Folly.

A *Pace* and a *Leap* is an *Ayre*, in which Horses commonly go when they have not a good *Apy*; for the *Pace* puts him upon the *Hand*, and gives

Bbbb him

278 The New Method

him a Rise to *Leap* like one that Runs before he *Leaps*, and so may *Leap* Higher than he that goes every time a *Leap*. Thus I have shewed you these *Ayres*, *Corvets*, *Croupadoes*, *Balotadoes*, *Capriols*, and a *Pace*, and a *Leap*, which *Nature* must do more than *Art*: Two *Paces*, and three *Paces*, and a *Leap*, are not comely, and are indeed rather a *Gallop Galliard*, than can be called an *Ayre*.

My New Way at the SINGLE PILLAR,

Which is

Most Effectual and Operative for the Dressing of
all Horses in all *Ayres* whatsoever.

First bring the Horse *Saddled*, and *Bridled*, and put him under the *Button*, and then let a *Groom* take the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn for the *Right-Hand*, and Lap it about the *Single Pillar*,
and

of Dressing Horses. 279

and make it very short, (but where he Holds it Higher than where 'tis Tied to the Ring of the *Cavezone*) and let another *Groom* hold the Long *Reyn* of the *Cavezone* on the other side, in his *Hand*, with a *Poinson* in the other *Hand*, to *Prick* him if he should put out his *Croup* too much; and one behind him with a *Rod*, to keep him from going *Backwards*; and then let the *Cavalarizzo* Raise him *De firme a firme*, which is in a place: A little at first must satisfy you, for, *Rome was not Built in a day*. Thus Tying him short, he cannot Rise High, and therefore to find his Ease, he goes upon the *Hanches*; for he is forced to it: After he is Used so a little, two *Rodds* is the best *Help*, one upon the *Shoulder*, and the other under his *Belley*, which puts him upon the *Hanches*.

Tie him so still with the same *Reyn*, and when he is perfect *De firme a firme*, then make him go upon his *Voltoes* with two *Rods* in your *Hands*, *Helping* Before with one *Rod*, and the other under his *Belley*; and be you on the outside of the Horse, and he will go upon his *Voltoes* perfectly.

Bbbb 2 Tie

Tie him so still with the same *Reyn*, and *Help* him with both your *Rods* as before, and be on the outside of him, and then go forwards, and Face the Horse, and he will go in *Corvets* upon his *Voltoes* Backwards perfectly; which I never saw but this Way.

Tie him with the same *Reyn* still, and you may make him go Side-ways in *Corvets*.

Now Tie the Left *Reyn* (as you did the Right) short, which doth the Business; and do in all things as I told you for the *Right-Hand*; and thus the Horse goes perfectly on both *Hands*, in *Corvets* in a Place, upon his Turns, Backward upon his *Voltoes*, and Side-ways, without any body on him, which was never Known or Seen before.

When the Horse goes perfectly thus, then get upon him, the *Reyn* still Tied very short, and make him go as you did before in every thing, and you may make him go in all other *Ayres* the same Way.

HOW

HOW TO
DRESS A HORSE
PERFECTLY

*In Corvets without Pillar, which is the surest
Way.*

WHEN you Work a Horse upon *Corvets*, before you do that, you must make a Horse to Rise perfectly in *Pissadoes*, which is High Before, and to stay upon the *Hand*, using the *Cavezone* still; and this Forward, and not upon *Circles* at the first by any means: Then to make him go in *Corvets*, Tie the *Cavezone's* Reyn from the *Wall*, to keep that *Hinder Legg* to his other *Hinder Legg* that is next the *Wall*, and begin with two or three *Corvets*, and then *Walk* him again, and then *Corvet* him again; and if you Feel him on the *Hand*, and he goes forwards with it, he will Quickly be *Drest*; and if he goes Forwards too much, let him make his *Corvets* in a place, and pull him Back, and then make him go in *Corvets*.

Cccc When

When your *Left Shoulder* is to the *Wall*, you must Tie the right *Cavezone's Reyn* to the *Pommel*, which doth not only keep Back his *Hinder-Legg* on the same side the *Cavezone's* right *Reyn* is Tied, but it also Supples his *Shoulders* extremely, and prepares him; nothing like it to go upon *Voltoes* on the right *Hand*.

When your *Right Shoulder* is to the *Wall*, then you must Tie the *Left Cavezone's Reyn* to the *Pommel*, for the same Reasons, and work him in *Corvets*, as I told you before; and this will prepare him, and make him go upon his *Voltoes* on the *Left-Hand*; and no Lesson better at the First.

There is another rare Lesson for *Corvets*, which is this; Tie the *Right Cavezone's Reyn* to the *Pommel*, and let him go on the *Left-Hand*, *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side, as if his *Head* was to the *Pillar*; and Raile him so in *Corvets*, two or three times, his *Croup* out; and then *Walk* him, and then *Corvet* him in the same Manner: This keeps out his Inward *Hinder-Legg*, and so Supples him to the *Hand* and *Heel*, that there is nothing like

of Dressing Horses. 283

like it; but though he goes on the *Left-Hand*, he is Supplied for the *Right-Hand*.

The *Left-Hand* is the same; you must Tie the Left *Cavezone's Reyn* to the *Pommel*, and go on the *Right-Hand*, his *Croup*.out, and help *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side, and so do in all things else, as you did before; and thus he shall never be *Entier*, but most Supple both to *Hand* and *Heel*.

To put him upon *Corvets* on his *Voltoes*, the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* must still be Tied to the *Pommel*, and his *Croup* must not be In too much; but rather *D'une piste*, for teaching of him, and to keep out the inward *Hinder-Legg* is the Business: Help a little with the outward *Reyn* of the *Bridle*, and make him go three or four *Corvets*, and then *Walk* him, and then *Corvet* him again; and so Diminish your *Walk*, and Augment your *Corvets*, until he makes a perfect Turn in *Corvets*; and when he is Perfect, then let the Horse go upon his *Voltoes* Byas in *Corvets*, and that's the Perfection in *Voltoes*: You must always (in *Corvets*) help with the outward *Reyn*, not only to keep

Cccc 2 him

284 The New Method

him up, but to give him the *Ply*, and to make him go *Byas*, and not help with your *Leggs* at all.

If you find he *Hastens* too much, then *Raise* him High in *Passadoes*, and keep him upon the *Hand*, and Help him with the *Rod* upon the *Shoulders* and *Leggs*, to make him bend them; which is the only *Grace* in all *Exercises* whatsoever: This, and thus Working of him upon his *Voltoes*, either *Dune pisle*, or his *Croup* in upon *Passadoes*, will make him go Rarely in *Corvets*.

To make a Horse go Side-ways in *Corvets*, help only with the *Bridle*, and put his *Head* to the *Wall*; and on the *Right-Hand*, help with the outward *Reyn*, and let the Horse go *Byas*; that is, his *Shoulders* before his *Croup*; and let him go three or four *Corvets* *Byas*, and then *Walk* him *Byas*; and then *Corvet* him *Byas* again, and so *Walk* him, and *Corvet* him; and by little and little *Diminish* his *Walking*, and *Augment* his *Corvets*, until he goes all in *Corvets*, which he will soon do, and very perfectly.

For the *Left-Hand*, using the outward *Reyn*,
and

of Dressing Horses. 285

and the Horse being *Byas*, do in every thing, as I told you before for the *Right-Hand*; and the Horse will very soon go *Byas*, and very Perfectly.

To make the Horse go in *Corvets* Backward, Pull the Horse back, and then make him go three or four *Corvets* in a place, and then pull him back again, and then *Corvet* him in a place again; and thus pulling him back, and *Corvetting* him in a place, Diminishing the pulling Back, and Augmenting the *Corvets*, he will at last go Backward in *Corvets* as perfectly as can be.

To go Forwards in *Corvets*, you must always Help with the *Reyn* to the *Wall*; to Inlarge him Before, and to Narrow him Behind; because he Leads with his Fore-parts, and his Hinder-parts follow to keep the Ground that his Fore parts hath got; his Fore-parts being at Liberty, and his Hinder-parts Prest.

To go Backwards in *Corvets*, you must always Help with the *Reyn* to the *Wall*; to Narrow him Before, and Inlarge him Behind, to be there at Liberty, because he Leads with his Hinder-parts,

Dddd and

and his Fore-parts follow, to keep the Ground that his Hinder-parts hath got; his Hinder parts being at Liberty, and his Fore-parts prest, your *Hand* is to be Low, that the Horse may not go too High, and your *Body* a little Forward, to give his Hinder-parts Liberty to Lead, and not Help with the *Leggs* at all, but with the *Hand* every time to pull him Back, as he Falls to the Ground.

For Side-ways in *Corsets*, you must Help with the outward *Reyn* and outward *Legg*; that is, you must pull that *Reyn* on which *Hand* soever he goes, and your contrary *Legg*; and that's right for Side-ways.

Knowing how to Help him Forwards, Backwards, and of each Side, in *Corsets*, put those together, and then you may make him do the *Circls* when you please, without any Difficulty.

For the *Sarab* in *Corsets*, it must be with the outward *Reyn*, which is to be pull'd first on one Side, and then on the other Side, in every *Corset*, from side to side, Helping only with
your

of Dressing Horses. 287

your *Hand*; your outward *Shoulder* following it, and not Helping with your *Leggs* at all.

All *Ayres* must be quick from the *Ground*, and are to Stay upon the *Hand*; that is, to *Soutenir*, or hold him there, but it must be Gently; a leight, and a firm *Hand*, Helping every time.

If a Horse beats upon the *Hand*, it is, because he doth not Obey the *Curb*; and in that case, you must Raise him very High in *Pasfadoes*, and hold him there, which puts him upon the *Curb*; and if this will not do, then Gallop him upon a straight Line by a *Wall*, or otherwise; and from his Gallop stay him upon the *Hand*, and let him go in *Corvets*; or let him Gallop forward *Le petit Gallop*, and Stop him, and then Raise him three or four *Pasfadoes* very High, and hold him on the *Hand* when he is Up, and this will cure him; if not, then Trot him, and Stop him good hard Stops; and pull him Back: And upon the same Circles *D'une piste*, Gallop him, and Stop him, and pull him Back, and this will Settle him on the *Hand*, I warrant you; your *Stirrups* being of

Dddd 2 an

288 The New Method

an equal Length, except one of your *Leggs* was Shorter than the other, and rather a Hole shorter than too Long; but still that you may Sit straight; not so Short as the *Italians*, or the *Spaniards*, but that you may Sit upon your *Twist*, and Straight upon your *Stirrups*.

THE TRUE WAY FOR CORVETS.

THE Seat is to be just as in *Terra a Terra*, but not so Stiff, nor so Oblique; the *Bridle-Hand* even with his *Neck*, the *Knuckles* towards his *Neck* on which *Hand* soever he goes; but the *Hand* still even with his *Neck*, two or three *Fingers* above the *Pommel*, and a little Forward, and no Help but *Soutenir*, and in good time, according to the *Horses* time; for every *Horse* takes his own time.

Quick

of Dressing Horses. 289

Quick it must be from the Ground, and to stay in the *Ayre* upon the *Hand*, your *Body* alwayes Going to that which Comes to you; that is, To Bend a little to him as he Rises; but so Insensibly, that the Beholders cannot perceive it.

You are to Sit as Forward to the *Pommel* as you can, being straight, and your *Thighes* and *Knees* as close as if they were Glued to the *Saddle*, but your *Toes* down, that you may be Weak in the *Hams*; that is, to have your *Nerves* Weak from the *Knees* down-wards, and Strong from the *Knees* upwards, and not touch your Horse with the *Leggs*, nor Help with your *Leggs* at all; but to leave his *Croup* free to follow his Fore-parts that Leads.

For when the Horse is between the Pillars, or at the Single Pillar *My Way*, and no body on him, yet he goes as just as can be, and yet there is no *Leggs* that Helps him, therefore you must not Help with your *Leggs* at all; for, if you Help with your outward *Legg*, he thinks he must go *Terra a Terra*; and if he doth go in

Eeee Cor-

Corvets, he goes all Awry, and Leans on the outside; and if you Help with the inward *Legg*, then he puts out his *Croup*, and Leans all on the inside; and if you Help with both your *Leggs*, it Presses him too much, and makes him go too quick a time; therefore the Right way is not to Help with your *Leggs* at all.

This is for a Horse that goes Perfectly; but if a Horse puts In his *Croup* too much, you must put it out with your inward *Legg*; and if he puts out his *Croup* too much, then you must put it In with your outward *Legg*: But Remember alwayes, that your Horse goes *Eyas* upon his Circles, his Fore parts always to Lead, which is Oblique: And this is the Exact way for *Corvets*.

of Dressing Horses. 291

O F

CORVETS upon VOLTOES,

A N D

To Change upon them.

SIt straight, a little Oblique; help not with the *Leggs* at all, until you *Change*; the *Toes* down to *unbrace* your *Nerves*, and your *Hand* eeven with his *Crest*, or *Neck*, and only *Soutenir*, and not help every time, in Musical time, and according to the time of the Horse, for every Horse takes his own time; though all *Ayres* should be quick from the Ground, and to stay upon the *Hand*, and help with the *Rod* in a just time, either Cross his *Neck*, or on the inside, which you please, as you find occasion: And as the Horse is thus going upon his *Voltoes* in *Corvets* on the *Right-Hand*, when you would *Change* him, put your *Right-Legg* gently to him, and then hold him Up with your *Hand* a little, on the inside of his *Neck*, the *Knuckles* always to-

Eeee 2 wards

wards his *Neck*, on which *Hand* foever you go; and as foon as he hath *Changed*, then take your *Right-Legg* from him, as before, and help not with the *Leggs* at all, only the poife is to be a little on the outside.

Now you are on the *Left-Hand*, when you would *Change* again, put your *Left-Legg* gently to him, and your *Hand* to hold him up a very little on the infide of the *Turn*, and then take away your *Left-Legg* as before, and help not with the *Leggs* at all. The Reason why (upon his *Changes*) I begin with the *Legg*, and not the *Hand*, is this: If I began with the *Hand*, he would Stop; and if I did Turn my *Hand*, his *Croup* would go out, and be Loft, and therefore I begin with the *Legg*; but instantly I hold him up with my *Hand*, when they are fo near together, that none can perceive it: If his *Shoulders* do not come In enough, you muft Turn your *Hand*, to help with the outward *Reyn*. And this muft be done fo Neatly, and Gently, and with fo much Art as poffibly can be, which is the Quinteffence of *Changing* upon *Voltoes* in *Corvets*: For *Demy-Voltoes*

of Dressing Horses. 293

Voltoes in *Corvets*, the same way, and the same Helps; and so for a *Demy-Ayre*, the same Helps.

A Horse that retains his Forces, and is *Pareseus*, and towards *Resty*, *Corvets* is an *Ayre* that will not agree well with him; and Horses of great *Fire*, and *Fougue*, that are Impatient, are very Improper for all *Ayres*, as *Corvets*, *Demy-Ayres*, and *Leaps*; but they are more proper to go upon the Ground; for, as to Furious Horses, and Impatient, all *Ayres* augment their *Collers*, and deprives them of Memory and Obedience.

I would have the first Lesson in *Corvets* to be made leasurely, and high Before, which is *Passadoes*; for that (long time before he brings his *Fore-Leggs* to the ground) doth give him means to assure his *Hanches*, and to firm his *Head*, and to bend his *Fore-Leggs*, and to Divert him from Apprehensions, and Unquietness, and to hinder him from Trampling, which is *Trepigner*.

F f f f

Here

Here I will shew you, How to Dress

LEAPING HORSES.

WALK a Horse forward, and then make him make one *Leap*, and presently Raise him High; a *Passadee*, or two; and stay him, and keep him upon the *Hand*, and then Augment your *Leaps*, and Diminish your *Passades*, and so by little and little he will *Leap* perfectly; and after he is perfect upon a right Line forward, then you must put him upon *Voltoes*, or *Circles*, and continue the same Method; but the *Circles* must be a little Large at first.

You must Remember, when you Raise him to *Leap*, That you Help him with your *Rod* behind, either one Stroke, or more, as you please, so it be in time; and that is, when the Horse is Raised, then Help him, but alwayes high *Passades* after he hath *Leapt*.

Remember to Sit Straight, your *Stirrups* a little shorter, a hole, or so; for too Short would throw you out of the *Saddle*, and to Long would
dis-

of Dressing Horses. 295

disorder your *Seat*, and make you lose your *Stirrups*; your *Toes* down, to slack your *Nerves* from the *Knees* downward, or else the Horse would *Bolt* forward too much; for a *Leaping* Horse should never go Forward above a Foot and a Half at the most; and when you Raise him, instantly put your *Brest* out, which makes your *Shoulders* go a little back (though insensibly) to the *Beholders*; for, did you not so when the Horse Rises, it would be too late when he Yerks behind, or Raises his *Croup*.

Now I must tell you, that your *Knees* and *Thighes* must be as Close as if they were Glu'd to the *Saddle*; and for your *Bridle-Hand*, you must alwayes Help with it the outward *Reyn*, to bring In his outward *Shoulder*, to Narrow him Before, and Inlarge him Behind, to Press him on the inside of the *Turn*, and to be at Liberty without the *Turn*, that his *Croup* may go a little Out, and be Free; for else, How should he *Leap*, if his *Croup* were Subjected, or Bound up? Therefore the outward *Reyn* is to be Used for all *Leaps* whatsoever, either Forward, or upon Circles.

Fff 2 Here

296 The New Method

Here I will Tell you a *Secret* for the *Hand*, concerning *Leaping* Horses; and that is this: The *Bridle* being a little Longer than ordinary, Raise him well, and every time put your *Hand* a little Forward, to *Soutenir*, and stay him there upon the *Hand*, as if he hung in the *Ayre*; and in every *Leap* help him so, and take a just time, like a *Ball* at the Bound.

All *Leaps* are made upon the *Hand*, and nothing else; therefore see that the Horse be well Settled upon the *Hand*, before ever you make him *Leap*; for nothing disorders a Horse's *Mouth* more than *Leaps*: For, a *Pace* and a *Leap*, it must be done the same way.

Thus ends the Method for teaching *Leaping* Horses.

A

TRUE OBSERVATION
IN RIDING.

There is no man, that hath not a *Musical Head*, that can be a good *Horse-man*, because all Horses ought to go in a just and Musical time, though the time Varies in every Horse, some Slower, and some Quicker; and besides, as no man Plays on the *Lute*, but the same *Strings* that he Stops with his *Left-Hand*, he always Strikes with his *Right-Hand*, or else it would be *Ill Musick*: So in *Riding*, whatsoever you Touch, or Help with your *Left-Hand*, you must Strike with your *Heel*, or *Calf* of your *Legg*, or else it will be *Ill Musick* on Horse-Back: And therefore a good *Horse-man* should never Fail to have *Hand* and *Heel* to go together, no more than the *Musitian* his two *Hands* together.

Here Ends the Third Part.

Gggg THE



THE
FOURTH PART,

Which Contains all the
FAULTS & ERRORS
THE HORSE
Can commit ; with the *Vices*, and Horse's *Sins* in the
M A N N A G E,

*And the ways How to Rectifie him, and the Medi-
cines How to Cure him.*



O Horse makes a *Fault*, but it is
either in his *Shoulders*, or his *Croup*;
either Before, or Behind: That
is, He doth either Disobey the
Hand or the *Heel*.

If you Work Horses, as I have told you, in
the first *Lessons*, he can never be *Entier*, which is,

Gggg 2 Not

300 The New Method

Net to Turn; for, *Entier* is to put In his *Croup*, and put Out his *Shoulders*; and those *Lessons* puts Out his *Croup*, and In his *Shoulders*, which is contrary to *Entier*: So that Suppling a Horſes *Shoulders* thus, a Horſe can never be *Entier*; for indeed, it is the Stiffneſs of his *Shoulders*, more than his *Croup*; and Working as I have told you, he ſhall never be *Entier*: But, if he be very Obſtinate, pull the Inward *Cavezone's* Reyn hard to you, and *Spur* him on the inſide, and that will *Cure* him.

If the Horſe doth not Obey the *Heel*, but puts Out his *Croup*, then his *Head* to the *Wall* (*Legg* and *Reyn* contrary) will *Cure* him; if not, then upon his *Circles* put his *Head* from the *Turn*, and Help him with your outward *Legg*, and *Spur* him, (if there be cauſe) then bring In your inward *Shoulder*, which puts In his *Croup*; but his *Leggs* go Faſſe: If this will not do, then pull the outward *Cavezone's* Reyn to the *Turn*, which Infallibly will put In his *Croup*, but Faſſer than the other; becauſe now he is pull'd to Look out of the *Turn*, and his *Croup* before his *Shoulders*, and
his

of Dressing Horses. 301

his *Leggs* very False; but what is good for the *Stomack*, is ill for the *Liver*, and one must not Rectifie to many things at once; but when you have Cured the *Vice*, fall to the True Way of *Riding* again.

When a Horse goes False upon his *Terra a Terra*, in bringing in his *Shoulders* too much, and taking too much *Ground* with his Fore-parts, there is no way to *Remedy* it, like Tying the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn as Straight as possibly you can to the *Pommel*; for then he hath not so much Room to bring In his *Shoulders*, though it appears otherwise; but thus he takes shorter Steps, and less *Ground*; and then he is Cured.

T O

Work only with the Bridle, a Horse that bath the Vice of bringing In his outward Shoulder too much.

THis *Vice* is Disobeying both the *Hand* and the *Heel*; but more the *Hand*: For, no
Hhhh Horse

302 The New Method

Horse can bring In his *Shoulders* too much, but he must put Out his *Croup*; and no Horse that bringeth In his *Shoulders* too much, but he comes into the *Turn*, and keeps not his *Ground*; and if he Rise too High, he hath more Liberty to bring In his outward *Shoulder*: Then the Business to Recover him of that *Vice* is, To keep him Low, and to make him go Forward Truly, both with his *Leggs* and *Body*, you Sitting in the right Posture as you should, and with true and right Helps for *Terra a Terra*, as I have shewed you before. Then to Cure him is thus; sit Oblike as I have shewed you, pulling the inward *Reyn*, your *Hand* on the outside of his *Neck*, your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck*; and to keep him Down, that he shall not Rise too High, your *Bridle-Hand* as low as his *Neck*, and that will keep him down; and there is half his *Vice* Cured, that he cannot come In so much. And now to keep him from coming In at all; because his coming In is by reason of his not going Forward: Therefore to make him go Forward, you must Help with both your *Leggs*; and as the outward *Legg* keeps In his
Croup,

of Dressing Horses. 303

Croup, so the inward *Legg* puts him Forward; so the *Hand Low* keeps him Down, and both *Leggs* puts him Forward, and then he is *Cured* with right *Helps*, and goes *Truly*. This I have tried, and find it to be most true; where all the other *Helps* may do, but they are False, both for the Man's Sitting, and the Horse's Going; therefore I set down none but this, because you should not Use them: ^{Doing} ~~Doing~~ *Voltoes* may be good sometimes, for this *Vice* may fix his *Croup*.

OBSERVATIONS.

MAny Horses, though they can do nothing but *Trott*, yet when they are Prest in the *Mannage*, they will make a shuffling *Amble*; nay, they will perfectly *Amble*, which is the worst Action for the *Mannage* that possible can be; and therefore to hinder them of that Action, there is nothing better, than to pull in their *Heads* into the *Turn* as much as possible you can, and to put

Hhhh 2 them

304 The New Method

them upon as Narrow *Circles* as you can; and this will hinder them from *Ambling*: And to give them the *Spurrs* soundly, when they *Amble*, will also put them from *Ambling*: Many strong Horses will *Amble* when they are Prest in the *Mannage*, but commonly Horses *Amble* out of Weakness, either by *Nature*, or that they are almost *Tyred*: As soon as *Foles* are *Foled*, we see that they all *Amble* at first, because they are so Weak; and after they come to a little strength, then they *Trott*.

There are many Horses, that whensoever they are Prest, they will put up their *Heads*; it may be to shun the Pressure of being put upon the *Hanches*; for, holding up their *Heads* puts them off of the *Hanches*. To Remedy this, Tie the *Cavezone*, My Way, to the *Pommel*; for, that pulls down his *Head*, and therefore must put him on the *Hanches*: But the Horse, to hinder that, will Strive still not to be upon the *Hanches*, by putting out his *Croup*; then you must *Spurr* him on that side until he Obeys you: It may be he casts up his *Head*, because he doth not Obey the *Curb*; then
you

of Dressing Horses. 305

you must *Trott* him, and *Stopp* him; and *Gallop* him, and *Stopp* him, and pull him *Back*; and this upon the *Shoulders*, and then he is *Cured*.

Whensoever a Horse goes too much on the *Back*, and fetches disordered *Leaps*, there is no way better to Hinder him, than to Hold him well and fast on the *Hand*; for, a Slack hand gives him liberty to *Leap*, when a Stiffer hand hinders him from *Leaping*.

When a Horse uses to go Low in *Corrvets*, and that by much Rest, and many Holly-daies, or but little Riding, the Horse goes too much on the *Back*; there is nothing takes him off more, than to put In his *Croup*, and his outward *Hanch*, for that subjects his Hinder-parts so much, as he is hindred, and tied up from *Crouping*, or going up on the *Back*: But before you come to that, it were very good to *Trott* and *Gallop* him so long upon Large Circles, *D'une piste*, until you find that you have totally abated his *Cbine*, and taken him off of his *Back*, and then put In his outward *Hanch*, to subject his *Croup* again, that he may go on the *Hanches*, and not to go on the *Back*.

306 The New Method

For there is nothing in the World puts a Horse more upon the *Hanches*, than the *Cavezone* My Way, tied to the *Pommel*, and to Press him on the outside of the *Turn*, that he may Lean on the outside; that is, to Lean on his outward *Legg*, that is, on his outward *Hinder-Legg*, which is done by the inward *Reyn* crols his *Neck*, or tied to the *Pommel*, to put him on the outside.

If a Horse will not *Trott* right, but wrangle in his going, between a false *Trott*, and a false *Gallop*; then tie the inward *Reyn* of the *Cavezone* very straight to the *Pommel*, and put out his *Croup* very much upon *Large Circles*; and if he still doth *jumble*, and falsify his *Leggs*, give him the *Spurr*, within the *Turn*; or both *Spurrs* soundly, and good *Stops*; and this Infallibly will make him *Trot* right, and go just upon his *Trott*, or *Gallop*, as he should do.

O F
A RESTY HORSE.

A *Resty Horse* is he that will not go Forward; the Way then is, To pull him Backwards, and then he will go Forwards: It seldom Fails; but if it do Fail, then use your *Spurs* to the purpose; and though he Rebels a great while, the *Spurs* will perswade him at last, being the best Argument you can use to him, if they be given Sharply, (soundly, and in time) and are continued until he doth Yeeld, which certainly he will do at last; for this *Remedy* never fails; all other *Remedies* are Foolish; you were as good Apply *Rose Water* and *Sugar-Candy* to him: Therefore the *Spurs* does the Business. For all our Old Writers were mightily deceived in it.

For a Horse that is *Retenn*, *Paresus*, or *Contre-Coeur*, which is all but a spice of *Restiness*, be sure to use the *Spurs*.

For a Horse that Falls down upon the *Ground*, or in the *Water*; *Eites*, or *Strikes*; nothing bet-

308 The New Method

ter than the *Spurs*. But I must tell you, for *Vicious* Horses, that indangers the Company by *Biteing*, and *Striking*, there is no better way than to *Geld* them; for that will *Cure* them, or nothing. But I assure you, that *Vicious* Horses are very hardly Recovered, or never; so dangerous a thing it is to have such a *Fade*, and the Worst, if he be Spoil'd by an Ignorant *Rider*: And more Horses are Spoil'd by ill *Riding*, and are made *Vicious*, than by *Nature*.

OF A RUN-AWAY HORSE.

FOR a *Run-away Horse*, you must have a gentle *Bitt*, the *Curb* slack, a gentle *Cavezone*, that nothing may Hurt his *Mouth*, or his *Nose*; for, certainly sharp *Cavezones*, and cruel *Bitts*, hard *Curb'd*, made Horses *Run Away* heretofore, making them Desperate. You must also have a *Gentle Hand*, offend him no way; and *Walk* him
first

of Dressing Horses. 309

first without *Stopping*, but staying of him by little and little; and then *Trott* him; and from his *Trott*, to his *Walk*; and so by little and little stay him: And always make much of him when he Obeys you. And from his *Trott*, you must *Gently Gallop* him; and from his *Gallop*, to a *Trot*; and from his *Trot*, to his *Walk*; and from his *Walk*, by little and little, stay him, and always with a *Gentle Hand*. This is to prevent him from *Running away*.

But put the case he doth *Run away*, What is to be done then? It is certain, that the more you pull the *Cavezone*, he will *Run* the Faster to Oppose you; and the more you pull the *Bridle*, and straighten the *Curb*, hurting him, the more you Pull, the more he will Pull, and *Run* the Faster; for Pulling doth no more good, than if you pull'd a *Wall*: Then if you have *Field-Room*, when he begins to *Run*, give him the *Spurrs* continually, sharply, and soundly, and slack the *Bridle*, and *Spurr* him until he begins to slack of himself, and to be contented to stay; and as often as he begins to *Run*, use the same way,

Kkkk and

210 The New Method

and at last I dare undertake he will be *Cured*: For this is the best way in the World for a *Run-away Horse*.

But if you have not Room, and are Circumscrib'd in a Narrow place, then let him Run Circularly, until he is Weary, with a slack *Hand*: But if you have not Room, the best is, To put him to the *Single Pillar*, with a good strong *Rope*; both which will hold him, and there he can Run but Circularly, and Round; and give him the *Spurs* soundly, until he be weary, and contented to stay; and this at last, no doubt, will *Cure* him.

Of a Horse that

RETAINS his FORCES.

WHEN a Horse *Retains his Forces*, you must Gallop him fast, and so *Terra a Terra*, to put him from thinking; for it is his Resty thinking, that makes that *Vice*: And let me tell you, that

of Dressing Horses. 311

that ill *Riders*, and *Bunglers*, at the first, makes (for the most part) all these *Faults*, and *Vicious* Horses, by ill *Riding*, correcting them out of time, or else in letting them have their wills too much.

Let me tell you for a great Truth, that the worst natured *Fade* in the world by *Nature*, is much easier *Drest*, and reduc'd to *Obedience*, than a Horse that hath been Spoil'd, and made Resty by ill *Riding*; so much worse is an ill Custom continued, than an ill Disposition by *Nature*: For, a customary *Drunkard* is hardly Reclaimed, which is not by *Nature*; and if Men be so, Horses may well be so too.

T O

Assure Horses for the Warrs.

AS when a Horse is *Skittish*, and apprehensive of *Noise*, there are many *Inventions*, and none of the Best. To stop the Horse's *Ears* with

Kkkk 2 Wool,

312 The New Method

Wool, that he should not *Hear*; that is, to make him *Deaf*, and to change the *Vice* for the disease of *Deafness*; but the *Vice* remains still. What if the *Wool* should fall out? Then you would find he was not *Cured*. But you may also be deceived, for it may be it is another *Sense*; that's *Sight*: And being afraid of *Fire*, when the *Guns* are *Fired*, Would you put *Spectacles* on him to make him both *Deaf* and *Blind*? They are great *Follies*. Therefore you must use him by little and little, to *Shott*, both to the *Noise* and *Sight* of the *Fire*; to *Drums*, *Trumpets*, and *Colours*; and the Custom of them will make him indure it, and go constantly upon any of them; *Sword*, or any thing; for Custom doth all things with Men, and so with Horses. You should teach him to Leap *Hedge*, *Ditch*, and *Rail*; for all these are the Useful things for a *Souldiers* Horse; as also to *Swim* well is very necessary.

OF
VITIOUS HORSES.

WHEN a Horse *Bites* at his *Shoulders*, and at his *Bitt*, and at his Riders *Leggs*, and *Rises*, and turns *Round*, ready to come *Over*: The best *Remedy* that I know, is, To *Ride* him without a *Cavezone*, to Offend him as little as may be; and to Tie the *Nose-band* as straight as you can; as also to have another *Nose-band* below, where the *Bitt* is tied; and to tie that as straight as possibly can be; so straight, as he cannot open his *Mouth*: And when the Horse finds that he cannot *Bite*, he will Leave those *Jadish* Tricks in a little time. And because the *Spurrs*, given him out of time, appear to be the cause of his *Viciousness*, and *Restiness*, therefore do not give him the *Spurrs* of a great while, but only *Trot* him upon Large *Circles*, and *Walk* him Quietly, and Peaceably; and when you have gained him to this Point, upon a peaceable and little *Gallop*, you

LIII' may

314 The New Method

may then touch him with the *Spurs*, but very gently, only to make him *Feel* them, and no more; and this way will *Cure* him, or else nothing.

THE

Old way for Trench and Martingal.

THis *Way* is to no purpose at all to *Dress* a Horse, since the end of *Riding* is, To go with the *Bit*; for, with the *Trench* and *Martingal*, you must use both *Hands*, and you have not a third *Hand* for the *Sword*; but with the *Bit*, your *Left-Hand* governs the Horse, and your *Right-Hand* is free for the *Sword*: But I will let you see, that to use the *Trench* and *Martingal*, is just so much time lost, as you *Ride* Horses with it, and no preparation at all for the *Bit*: For first, the *Trench* hath no *Curb*, therefore they will not understand the *Curb* by it, because it hath none. Then Secondly, there is no *Trench* in the world, or *Snaffle*, that ever wrought upon the *Ears* of a Horse,

of Dressing Horses. 315

Horse, but upon his *Lips*, and the *Weeks* of his *Mouth*. So, what preparation is there in the *Trench* for the *Bitt*, when the *Trench* can neither make him understand the *Curb*, nor the *Bars*? And the *Bitt* Works only upon those two places, *Curb*, and *Bars*; and without those two, no Horse can be a *Ready-Horse*. Nay, pull down the Horses *Head* as much as you can with the *Martingal*, or the *Trench*, it shall never work upon his *Bars*; the *Snaffle* is the same; for the *Trench* is but a great *Snaffle*: Then for the *Martingal*, use it never so long, the Horse shall not be settled one jot the better when you take it off.


So now you may see how unuseful a folly the *Trench* and *Martingal* is, for the *Dressing* of Horses; meerly so much time lost to no purpose, and labour in vain, and disordering the poor Horse; so that I wonder at the Horse-men, that had no more Wit than to use it.

It is the *Bitt*, with the *Cavezone*, and the true *Art* of *Riding*, that *Makes*, and *Dresses* Horses perfectly, and not the *Trench* and *Martingal*; no, nor the *Martingal* with the *Bitt*, if it be tied to

316 The New Method

the Arches of the *Bitt*, for then the *Curb* never Works; no, nor the New-fashioned *Martingal*, that is tied to the *Carvezone*, for it hinders the operation of the *Bitt*.

OF THE FALSE REYNS.

TO work Horfes with *Falfe Reynolds*, is very False working; for, being tied to the *Arches* of the *Bitt*, and pulling  that slacks the *Curb*; and so no Horfe shall be firm, and settled with it; for, that Horfe that doth not suffer the *Curb*, shall never be a *Ready-Horfe*; so it makes the *Bitt* like a *Snaffle*.

There is no way but the *Carvezone*, and the *Bitt*, to Settle and Dress Horfes withal perfectly; and when a Horfe is perfectly settled upon the *Hand*, (then being put upon the *Hanches*) he will go so perfectly, and Easily, as you shall hardly feel him upon the *Hand*, the *Bridle* will be so slack, and he will go so just.

If

of Dressing Horses. 317

If you Work, as this Book *Instructs* you, you shall never have any Horse *Vicious* in any kind, if nobody else have *Rid* him; and after he is *Drest* to that Perfection, he will hardly make you a *Fault*, if you Work as you should do.

*Of the Follies of some People, thinking they can
Make Leaping-Horses.*

There are many presumptuous Fellows, as Ignorant as they are Presumptuous, that Laughing, say, They will make any Horse a *Leaping-Horse*. Why? Because they will make him *Leap* over a *Stick*, like a *Jack-anapes*, or a *Dogg*; or make a Horse *Leap* over a *Barrel*, a *Rail*, *Hedge*, or *Ditch*. If that were all, we should have many *Leaping-Horses*; for, I know hardly any Horse but will do it, without any great *Art*: God help their Ignorance, poor Fools! For, a Horse to *Leap* so, is not the same *Leaping*, as a Horse *Leaps* in the *Mannage*.

Mmmm First,

First, for their Horses that *Leaps* over *Hedge* and *Ditch*, and of their fashion; they lay the *Reyns* in his *Neck*, and puts him Forward, which is a *Leap* of their Fashion, but not a *Leap* in the *Mannage*: And where they give him the *Reyns* to *Leap*, we hold him, and help him up with the *Hand* to *Leap*; and so with our *Heels*, if it need, at the same time: And thus the Horse Obeys both the *Hand* and the *Heels*, at the same time; hath an excellent *Mouth*, and a good *Apy*, both upon the *Bars*, and the *Curb*.

A Gentle-mans *Hunts-Boy*, though he can *Leap* his Masters *Gelding* over a *Hedge*, will not make him *Leap* upon the *Bars* and the *Curb* with his *Snaffle*; since his *Snaffle* hath no *Curb*, and his *Snaffle* never works upon the *Bars*, but upon the *Weeks*, and *Lips* of his Horses *Mouth*: Besides, our Horses will *Leap* so in a place, and not at *Leap-Frogg*, as their Horses, or at *Barley-break*, to *Leap* two or three *Tards* forward without feeling of his *Mouth*. Thus doth Ignorance Talk of things they do not Know: Nay, some *Horse men* hath been so foolish, as to think they could make a

Leap-

of Dressing Horses. 319

Leaping-Horse, with laying *Fur-bushes* for him to Leap over, which is the same as a *Hedge*; so foolish they have been: And now you see the truth of this, truly *Anatomized* to you.

OF A

Horse that goes Incaputiato, which is, when he Armes himself against the Bitt.

OUR Learned Authors are mightily mistaken about this *Vice*, as they call it, saying, A Horse is at no Command, and hard on the *Hand*, because the *Branches* rests upon his *Neck*, or *Shoulders*, and you cannot pull, or help him with your *Hand* at all; wherein they are horribly deceived: For, I have had Horses that have Armed themselves against the *Bitt*, as much as any Horse could do, and yet were as sensible to the *Hand*, and as leight on the *Hand*, as any Horse in the World; so they are mightily mistaken: For, if the Horse goes perfectly upon the *Hanches*, he

Mmm 2 must

must be leight on the *Hand*, let him Arm, or his *Head* be never so Low; and therefore they are Deceived that thinks otherwise.

This should have been put in the Second Part.

FOr Terra a Terra, you must Help with the Inward Reyn; Prest him on the Outside, and your Outward Shoulder a little Down; and then his Outward Shoulder cannot come In, as it doth with the other Way before mentioned: And thus the Horse is Prest all on the Outside of his outward Hinder-Legg, and so upon the Hanches; which in the other is upon the Shoulders, and the Horse being Prest on the Outside, his Leggs are at Liberty, to Lead on the Inside, and so he goes Even, and not Cross; which is the exact and right Terra a Terra.



A N
E P I T O M Y
O F
HORSE-MANSHIP.

*In all Ayres you must Help with the Outward
Reyn.*

First for *Corvets*; you must Help with
the outward *Reyn*, and if the Horse be
not on the *Hanches* enough, you must
Soutenir more, not give him a time, but hold him
up more upon the *Hands*: And if his *Croup* go
Out, you must put your outward *Legg* a little
to him; and if he put his *Croup* In too much,
you must put your inward *Legg* a little to him,
and turn your *Hand* a little more, just over his
Neck, and only turn it up, but not within his
Neck.

Nnnn You

322 The New Method

You must help with the outward *Reyn* to bring In his outward *Shoulder*; for if that did not come In, he could not Turn upon *Voltoes*; and so his *Croup* is a little at Liberty, which makes him go the easier, freer, and at more Liberty to go straight forward.

To go *Byas*, on either *Hand*, you must still help with the outward *Reyn*, and *Soutenir*; that is, hold him up, without giving him a time: For, the Horse gives himself a time better than you can, and you must help with the outward *Legg*; that is, *Legg* and *Reyn* of a side, but both on the outside still.

To make him go Back in *Corvets*, use the outward *Reyn*; but here you must give him a time with your *Hand* every *cadance* that he makes, and your *Hand* closer to your *Body*; not to pull him Back, but to give him a time; and as he Falls, that time is to be a little Back, but not above a *Straw* breadth: Let your *Body* be a little Forward, your *Leggs* a little Back, and Sit not too Strong.

of Dressing Horses. 323

O F

DEMY - ATRES.

YOU must use the very same Helps, as in *Corvets*, in every thing: For, when his *Croup* is within the *Voltoe*, if you Help, as I have told you, (so you put him forward) he will go easily, and just, as a Horse should always go forward, in every thing, but when you will pull him Back.

O F L E A P S.

USe the outward *Reyn* still, but you must *Soutenir* more; that is, to hold him up Harder, and not to give him a time, but still to hold him up, for the Horse gives himself the best time; and do not Help with your *Leggs*, but only *Hands* and *Rod*; and the *Rod* under *Hand*, and Help him in time, and as much upon the *Dock* as you can, to make him *Strike Out*.

Nnnn 2 Upon

324 The New Method

Upon *Voltoes* use the outward *Reyn*; but here his *Croup* must be a little out, to give him Liberty, for else he could not go, if his *Hanches* were subjected; and he must go Larger upon his *Voltoes*, as if he went forward with all the Liberty that may be; for this is a forcible *Ayre*.

O F

P A S S A D O E S.

STill use the outward *Reyn*, to bring In his outward *Shoulder*; and so in *Demy Voltoes*.

So in the *Piroyte*, with the outward *Reyn*; but not to Turn the *Hand* on the inside of his *Neck*, and keep him Low.

To *Gallop* and *Change*, with the outward *Reyn* still.

O F

OF
T E R R A A T E R R A.

HERE you are to use the inward *Reyn*, for now you must keep the outward *Shoulder* Back, and give his inward *Shoulder* Liberty, that he may look into the *Turn*, rest upon his outward *Leggs*, and his inward *Leggs* at Liberty, which you may know by his *Neck* leaning on the outside.

You must know, that the outward *Reyn* brings In his outward *Shoulder*, presses him on the Inside, and gives his outward *Leggs* liberty, and so his *Croup* goes a little out.

Use the outward *Reyn* in *Passager*; for, if his outward *Shoulder* comes not In, How shall he lap one *Legg* over another, which they call *Incarvelar* in *Italian*, and *Passager* in *French*?

Now, whatsoever makes his *Croup* go out upon a *Trot*, or *Gallop* large, it works his *Shoulders*; so his *Croup* going out (*Legg* and *Reyn* on a side) works his *Shoulders*, because his inward *Legg* goes out as upon *Large Circles*, his inward *Legg* being wrought: This working his *Shoulders*

Oooo is

326 The New Method

is an excellent thing for a Young Horse, or an ignorant Horse at first; for without his *Shoulders* be *Supple*, he shall never go: Besides, it keeps him from being *Entier*, or have the *Credenza*, which is, *Resty* in Turning, and is the worst *Vice* a Horse can have.

TO WORK his CROUP.

L Egg and *Reyn* contrary, his *Head* to the *Wall*, Works his *Croup*, so the inward *Reyn* be pulled.

Cross his *Neck*, *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary, his *Croup* In, works his *Croup*, so the inward *Reyn* be pull'd *Cross* his *Neck*; his *Croup* in, the inward *Reyn* pull'd hard on the outside, so that his *Neck* may *Lean* on the outside, Works his *Croup*.

In his *Length* the same, and Raise him in *Pas-
sades* his *Croup* In, works his *Croup*; and all this puts him upon the *Hanches* to Boot, which is all our business.

Now

of Dressing ^{Hind}Horses. 327

Now, as you are Working his *Croup*, you must give him the *Spur* now and then, to make him *Flie*; for he never Obeys it, until he *Flies* it; it is not a Correction with the *Spurr*, but a little *Touch*; which may be given him upon *Large Circles* too; that is, he must *Flie* it, and yet be upon the *Hanches*: This touch gently with the *Spurr*, may be upon any thing; to thrust him like a *Carrier*, to stop him, and thrust him away presently again, makes him Obeey the *Heel* perfectly; Stopping, and going Back, and Raising of him, puts him upon the *Hanches*.

You must understand, that a Horse having two *Hinder-Leggs*, when his inward *Hinder-Legg* is put out, by the outward *Reyn*, then his outward *Shoulder* is wrought, and his *Croup* out, and not upon the *Hanches*; is prest within, and at Liberty without.

But when his outward *Legg* is prest by the inward *Reyn*, and your outward *Legg*; then his *Croup* is wrought, and he is upon the *Hanches*; so the outward *Reyn* works the *Shoulders*, and the inward *Reyn* (with the outward *Legg*) works the

Oooo 2 *Croup*,

328 The New Method

Croup, and puts him upon the *Hanches*; and the more, if you Raise him in *Paffadoes*.

To work his Fore-parts, and his Hinder-parts; to prefs him on his *Leggs*, without the *Turn*, and at Liberty within the *Turn*; to Prefs him on his *Leggs* within the *Turn*, and at Liberty without the *Turn*; to Obey the *Hand* and *Heel*, and to be upon the *Hanches*, is all that can be done: And this that I have Written doth it perfectly.

Until he be *Supple* on the *Shoulders*, and Stop perfectly upon his *Trott*, and is perfectly fetled upon the *Hand*, he shall never be a *Ready-Horse*: The way to *Supple* his *Shoulders* best, is the *Carvezone My Way*; and to pull the inward *Reyn* to your *Knee*, which brings In his outward *Shoulder*; *Galloping* puts him upon the *Apuy*; but never *Gallop* him until he Stop perfectly upon his *Trott*, and that he is so Leight as he offers to *Gallop* of himself. The Stop upon a *Trott*, must be hard, and on a Sudden; the Stop upon a *Gallop*, with two or three little *Falcadoes*; and never Stop and Raise him together, but Stop first, and Raise him afterwards.

To

of Dressing Horses. 329

To Work his *Croup*, you must use the *Cavezone's Reyn Cross* his *Neck*; which puts him so on the Outside, that you may feel his outward *Hanch* to go In, and his *Neck* to Lean on the Outside.

So that pulling the *Cavezone* to your *Knee*, brings In his outward *Shoulder*, and Supples his *Shoulders*; Presses him on the Inside, and puts him at Liberty on the Outside. So pulling the inward *Cavezone's Reyn Cross* his *Neck*, works his *Croup*; that is, his outward *Hanch* being put In, (*Legg* and *Reyn* contrary) he Leans all on the Outside, and makes him Obey the *Heel*; Presses him on the Outside, and gives him Liberty within the *Turn*: Never *Stop* him, but put your outward *Legg* to him; or else he cannot be upon the *Hanches*.



A N
EFFECTUAL DISCOURSE
O F
HORSE - MANSHIP.

CERTAINLY the Foundation of all *Ayres* in the *Mannage*, and the Ground of every thing, is, *Trotting*, and *Stopping*, with Looking into the *Turn*; a gentle *Stop*, not too Hard, which puts a Horse upon the *Hanches*, and settles him upon the *Hand*; because it pulls him Down before; but too Hard a *Stop* pulls him Up before; and therefore puts him off of the *Hanches*.

To make him Look into the *Turn*, the *Cavezone*, My Way, and pulling the inward *Reyn* to your *Knee*, low, or beyond it, brings In his outward *Shoulder*, and Bends him into the *Turn* very much; Supples his *Shoulders*, Presses him within the *Turn*, and leaves his *Leggs* at liberty without the *Turn*; and pulling him Down before,
makes

of Dressing Horses. 331

makes him *Stop* well: But see still, that his outward *Shoulder* comes In, and then he shall never be *Entier*; which is the greatest *Vice* a Horse can have.

To Tie the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn to the *Pommel*, puts a Horse on the Outside, and presses him there, except your inward *Legg* puts Out his *Croup*; therefore I would have you Tie the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn to the *Girths* below, which Presses him within, and gives Liberty to his *Leggs* without the *Turn*, and brings In his outward *Shoulder*: And thus Tied to the *Girths*, is more powerful, than if you held it in your *Hand*; for, many Horses may force your *Hand*, which they cannot do, when it is Tied to the *Girths*; and pulling him Down thus, makes him *Stop* well. Going *Back* sometimes, is an excellent thing to put him on the *Hanches*, to put him on the *Hand*, and to make him Leight on the *Hand*, and to make him *Advance*.

For *Passager*, there is nothing better, than Tying the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn to the *Girths*; for it brings In his outward *Shoulder*, to lap

one *Legg* over another, and *Supples* his *Shoulders*.

Passees is a rare thing to put a Horse upon the *Hand*, and prepare him for all *Ayres*; it puts him on the *Hanches* too; and especially is excellent for *Leaping Horses*; and all this with the inward *Cavezone's* *Reyn* Tied to the *Girthes*; upon a *Trott*, or *Le petit Gallop*, it is an excellent thing to give him a little touch with the *Spur*, to make him *Flie* it, and *Obey* it; but then it must not be abandoned upon the *Shoulders*, but upon the *Hanches*, when he feels the *Spur*.

The *Cavezone* is the Rarest thing in the world for *Dressing of Horses*; not only to *Preserve* their *Mouth*, but to give them the *Ply*, which is to *Bend* them into the *Turn*, to make them *Look* into the *Turn*, to work their outward *Shoulder*, to bring it into the *Turn*: And thus to *Supple* their *Shoulders*, either upon a *Trott*, or *Gallop D'une piste*; or *Passager* the *Croup* In, or *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side; and all this to *Supple* the *Shoulders*, which is a principal thing.

The *Cavezone* again, (*Legg* and *Reyn* contrary) works a Horse's *Croup*; his *Croup* out, as if it
were

of Dressing Horses. 333

were to the *Pillar*, or his *Croup* In for *Passager*, or to the *Wall*; for *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary, works his *Croup*; for it puts him on the *Hanches*, because it Presses him on his outward *Leggs*, and makes him subject to the *Heel*; for he cannot get from it, so *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary works his *Croup*, as the former wrought his *Shoulders*; Prest him within, and gave him Liberty without: So this *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary Presses him without, and gives him Liberty within. But when you work *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary, I would wish you to have the *Cavezone's* *Reyn* in your *Hand*; for so you will Help him the better.

Thus you see how Powerful the *Cavezone* is to Work *Shoulders*, or *Croup*, or any thing for the perfect *Dressing of Horses*; so that I will undertake to *Dress a Horse* better, and more perfectly, with a *Cavezone* without a *Bitt*, than with a *Bitt* without a *Cavezone*; therefore use the *Cavezone*; but then it must be My Way, or else it is of little effect.

Since *Trotting*, and *Stopping* upon the *Trott*, is the *Foundation* of all *Ayres* in the *Mannage*, there.

Qqqq fore

334 The New Method

fore highly Efficacious of it, and Practice it most; that is, Never do any thing with your Horse, until he *Stop* perfectly upon his *Trott*; for, if you do, you will perfectly Spoil him for ever.

Whether upon a *Large Circle* *Dune* *passe* his *Croup* Out, upon a *Trott*, or his *Croup* In, or straight by a *Wall*: When you *Stop*, be sure you put your *Body* Back, and pull In your *Bridle-Hand*, but not too Suddenly at first; and be sure you pull the inward *Reyn* hard, to put him on the Outside, to rest on his outward *Hinder Legg*, which puts him upon the *Hanches*; so that you may be sure, at the same time, to *Help* him with your outward *Legg*, which certainly will put him Effectually upon the *Hanches*, which is our main Business, and Work: And therefore do this perfectly, and it will pull Down his *Head*.

ANOTHER
L E S S O N

T O

Put him upon the *HANCHES*, which is very
Effectual.

TO put a Horse upon the *Hanches*, Tie the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn to the *Girthes*, and then *Walk* him *D'une piste*, or a short *Trott*, your inward *Legg* to him, and be sure he neither puts his *Croup* Out, nor In; for if he doth either, this *Lesson* is of no Force; but if he doth not, there is nothing puts him more on the *Hanches*.

336 The New Method

It is very Material, for the Dressing of Horses in the Mannage, to Know the several Operations of the Inward Cavezone's Reyn (My Way) Tied to the Girthes, or Tied to the Pommel.

WHen the Inward *Cavezone's Reyn* is Tied to the *Girthes*, it Works his outward *Shoulder*, Presses his *Leggs* within the *Turn*, and leaves his *Leggs* at Liberty without the *Turn*.

It is Excellent to *Trott* him Large or Narrow *D'une piste*, or *Gallop* him Large or Narrow *D'une piste*, for this *Supples* his *Shoulders*, his *Croup* a little Out, which brings In his outward *Shoulder* more.

It is good also, *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side, his *Croup* Out, to *Supple* his *Shoulders*.

It is Excellent in *Passager*, his *Croup* a little In, to Lap one *Legg* over another, because his outward *Shoulder* comes In; but if you Press his *Croup* too much In, it is impossible he should go;
be-

of Dressing Horses. 337

because the *Reyn*, being Tied to the *Girthes*, Works his outward *Shoulder*; and putting his *Buttock* In too much, puts his outward *Shoulder* back; and two Contraries is impossible to be Wrought at once.

It is Excellent for *Le petit Gallop*, his *Croup* a little In, and proper for it, because it works his *Shoulders*.

The inward *Reyn* Tied to the *Girthes*, is proper and excellent for *Corvets*, because it brings In the outward *Shoulder*, and so consequently gives a little Liberty to the *Croup*.

In all these *Lessons*, if his *Shoulders* come not In enough, you must turn your *Bridle-Hand* a little, which Works the outward *Reyn*, and so consequently the outward *Shoulder*.

This Working of the *Shoulders*, makes all Horses easie; and thus Wrought, they shall never be *Entier*.

This Tying the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* to the *Girthes*, is an Oblique Line within the *Turn*, and therefore works his outward *Shoulder*.

The inward *Cavezone's Reyn*, Tied to the *Pommel*,
Rrrr mel,

338 The New Method

mel, is an Oblique Line cross his Neck, and this Line puts Back his outward *Shoulder*, and puts Forward his Inward *Shoulder*; Presses him on the Outside, and gives his *Leggs* Liberty within the *Turn*, and is most proper for *Terra a Terra*, which never any found out but my self; but it is Naught for *Corvets*, because it subjects his *Croup* too much; but this Works his *Croup* mightily, either *Legg* or *Reyn* contrary, his *Croup* Out; or *Passager*, his *Croup* In; either in his Length, or a little Larger; and so to Raise him in *P^{ass}ades*; and makes him Infinitely subject to the *Heel*.

But this Oblique Line cross his Neck to the *Pommel*, is not so powerful, as when I have it in my *Hand*, and pull it to my outward *Shoulder*, because the *Line* is then longer, then when it is Tied to the *Pommel*.

When his *Head* is to the *Wall*, (if you would Work his *Shoulders*;) then pull the Inward *Cavezone's* *Reyn* to your *Knee*; if you would Work his *Croup*, then pull the inward *Cavezone's* *Reyn* to your outward *Shoulder*.

There is no doubt, but that, though the inward
ward

of Dressing Horses. 339

ward *Cavezone's* Reyn be Tied to the *Pommel*, to Trott him upon Large *Circles*, or to Gallop him Large, it Works his *Shoulders*; but the Reason of that is, because his *Croup* is out, and then of necessity his outward *Shoulder* must come In.

If you can Work, according to these Precepts, and Apply these Excellent *Lessons* to the Horse, and see perfectly where the *Fault* lies, either in his *Shoulders*, or his *Croup*, you will Infallibly Make all Horses that ever comes into your *Hands*; which I wish you may do, and not find *Fault* with it, because you cannot do it.

For *Corvets* forward, you must Help with the outward *Reyn*; your *Hand* not on the Inside of his *Neck*; but just upon his *Neck*; your little *Finger* turn'd Up, which pulls the outward *Reyn*; and the *Hand* a little Forward, which Works upon the *Curb*, and to *Soutenir*, which is to hold him Up: Thus the *Curb* pinches him a little; and to give himself Ease of the *Curb*, he is forced to go upon the *Hanches*, and that is as I would have him.

Which way soever the *Branches* of the *Bitt*

Rrrr 2 goes

goes, the *Mouth* goes alwayes contrary; you pull the *Bridle*, and that pulls the *Branches* Up; then the *Mouth* goes down, which puts him upon the *Hanches*; for no Horse can be upon the *Hanches* when his *Head* is up.

This is the Truth in *Corvets*; and in all *Ayres* whatsoever, you must still Help with the outward *Reyn*, and never give a time with your *Hand*, but only *Soutenir*, which is, to Hold him Up; for the Horse will give himself a better time than you can: But going *Backward*, you must *Help* him every time, and with the outward *Reyn*, your *Body* a little Forward, and your *Leggs* a little *Back*; and Sit easie upon him, and not too hard.

Upon *Voltoes* in *Corvets*, use the outward *Reyn*, and in every thing as I told you before; only let the Horse go *Forward*, as if he did not *Turn*, which ought to be upon all *Circles* whatsoever, except the *Piroyte*; and commonly you are not to *Help* with your *Leggs* at all; but if you do, it must be the outward *Legg* a little to him. This is the perfection of all *Ayres* whatsoever.

THE

THE
QUINTESSENCE
OF
HORSE--MANSHIP.

IF your Horse will not *Bend* his *Shoulders*, which is the principal thing, then Tie the *Cavezone* (My Way) to the *Girth*, the inward *Reyn* as strait as you can; but then you must Work upon nothing but Large or Narrow *Circles*, his *Croup* out, either upon a *Trott*, or a *Gallop*; or *Legg* and *Reyn* on a side, his *Croup* out: And this Infallibly will *Supple* his *Shoulders*, and he shall never be *Resty*, nor *Entier*.

But should you put In his *Croup* when he is Tied so hard, it is so much against Nature, and such a Forced thing, as it is impossible for him to go; and so, to get what Ease he can, where you think to work his outward *Shoulder* In, you put it Back, and work his Inward *Shoulder*; for the poor Horse hath no other way to Ease himself.

Sfff And .

242 The New Method

and thus *Horse-men* are deceived; work against Nature, and Spoil the Horse.

But if you would Work his *Shoulders*, and put In his *Croup*, then you must take the Inward *Cavezone's* *Reyn* in your *Hand*, and pull it to your *Knee*, and *Help* with the outward *Legg*; this is not so great a Force as the other, and therefore brings In his outward *Shoulder* with Ease, and gives a little Ease to his *Croup*, being not so much In; and therefore is proper for *Le petit Gallop*, his *Croup* In, and for *Passager* his *Croup* In; most proper for a *Gallop*, but not at all for *Terra a Terra*; for there is none for *Terra a Terra* but my way, which I wonder how I found out, it is so Rare and True: For there the outward *Shoulder* is kept Back, and the inward *Shoulder* Forward, and the *Cavezone's* *Reyn* to your *Knee*; the outward *Shoulder* comes In, and the inward *Shoulder* is kept Back. This is the true difference betwixt *Le petit Gallop*, and *Terra a Terra*, upon *Circles*. This you should get by *Heart*, for it is the Rarest thing in the world, because it is a subtile Truth.

OF

of Dressing Horses. 001



To Know the Degrees of Tying the inward Cavezone's Reyn, either to the Girthes or the Pommel of the Saddle, which is the Life or Soul of the Mannage, never found out but by My Self.

I Begin with Tying the inward *Cavezone's Reyn* to the Girthes, which works his outward *Shoulder*, presses him within the *Turn*, and leaves his outward *Leggs* at Liberty; is fit for *Gallopping* large, or narrow, *D'une Piste*; as also for *Passager*, either large, or in his length; and for the *Piroyte*.

No Horse can go, or be made a *Ready-Horse*, until his *Shoulders* be extreamly Supple; and therefore this is the best *Lesson* in the world to Supple his *Shoulders*: But you must take heed of putting his *Croup* in too much, for it is impossible to put in his *Croup*, and put out his *Croup* all at one time; for the *Cavezone's Reyn* tyed to the Girthes, puts out his *Croup*, and at the same time

*** Sfff 2 you

you will put in his *Croup* with your *Heel*, which cannot be: And when the Horse finds your Ignorance, working impossibilities, then he grows Impatient and Resty, as he hath great reason to be so. Therefore you must not Tye the *Cavezone* too strait; for if you do, the Horse cannot go forward, but turns Round, and so grows Resty again, as he must needs do, which is your Fault, not his. You should Tye the *Cavezone* no straiter than to make him Look into the Turn, and no more; that is, so strait, that he cannot Look out of the Turn: And thus he may go Forward, and be pleased; which is Natural, and no Impossibility.

The inward *Cavezone's* Reyn tyed to the Pom-mel is another Business; for, this presses the Horse on the outside of the Turn, and leaves his *Leggs* within the Turn at liberty; keeps back his outward *Shoulder*, and works his *Croup*, and his outward *Hanch*, and makes him subject to the *Heel*, because he cannot get from it; so he Obeys it, and Flies it. This is proper for *Terra a Terra*, and *Demi-Voltoes* upon the ground; but the in-ward

of Dressing Horses. 003

ward *Cavezone's* Reyn must not be tyed too strait; for if it be, then the Horse cannot go forward, no more than the other way, and will grow Resty: So the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn must be pull'd no harder, than just to make him Look into the Turn, and no more.

To pull the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn to your Knee, or beyond it, works the Horse's outward *Shoulder*, presses him on the Inside, and leaves his *Leggs* at liberty without the Turn, supples his *Shoulders*, and gives a little liberty to his *Croup*; and the inward *Cavezone's* Reyn tyed to the Girthes hath the same operation.

You are to know, that the Invention of the Pillars is a meer *Routine*; that is, by *Rote*; because it works by the *Eyes*, and not by Feeling the *Hand*, and the *Heels*, and being obedient to them: So that this Method of the Pillars, hath spoiled more Horses than any thing in the world, working upon the *Eyes*, by looking at the Pillars; and never any man wrought Horses well at the Pillar, but *Pluvinel*, that Devis'd them.

My Way is a Method of the *Cavezone*, and
there

004 The New Method

there he goes not by *Rote*; his *Eyes* doe nothing here, nor the *Voyce*; but the *Horses* meerly obey the *Hand* and the *Heel*, which makes them all Perfect, of what nature or condition soever they be, and never Fails me.

OF THE

Bridle and Bitt without the Cavezone.

YOU must know, that the *Bitt* is a strange Engine; for, wheresoever you pull the *Cheek*, the *Mouth* always goes contrary: When you turn up your little *Finger*, it pulls the outward *Reyn*, which works his *Shoulder* on the outside, and gives liberty to his *Croup* on the *Left-Hand*: Your little *Finger* a little more turn'd up, and a little on the left side, works his outward *Shoulder*, and gives his *Croup* a little liberty, which is fit for *Corvets*, Trotting, and Galloping *Dune piste*; so in *Pasadoes*, excellent for *Passager*, so for the *Piroyte*. Here the *Horse* is *Prest* within the *Turn*, and at liberty without the *Turn*.

For

of Dressing Horses. 005

For *Corvets* upon *Voltoes*, if his *Croup* be at the *Center*, put your outward *Legge* a little to him, and turn your *Hand* a little, and *Soutenir*, and he will go perfectly upon his *Turns* if he goes forward, which is the main business, and the Reason of that is, because he goes a little *Byas*; This is all with the *Reynes*, in your *Left-Hand*. And this makes him also go perfectly, *Le petit Gallop*.

For *Terra a Terra*, it is another thing, the *Reynes* being in your *Left-Hand*; Here you must pull the inward *Reyn*, to presse him on the out-side, and leave his *Legges* at Liberty, within the *Turn*; and you must turn your *Fist* inward, and turn it to your *Left-Shoulder*, close to it, which pulls the inward *Reyn*, and your outward *Legge* close to him; Thus he is prest on the out-side, and his *Leggs* at liberty within the *Turn*; But for *Terra a Terra* on the *Left-Hand*, your *Bridle* still in the *Left-Hand*, you must turn your little *Finger* up, and pull it close to your *Right-Shoulder*, helping with the outward *Legge*.

If

006 The New Method

If the *Reynes* be separated in both your *Hands*, then you must pull the inward *Reyn*, and your *Right-Hand* close to your *Left-Shoulder*, turning up your little *Finger*, and your *Legge* gently on the out-side. But for the *Left-Hand*, the *Reyns* separated in both your *Hands*, you must pull the inward *Reyn* close to your *Right-Shoulder*, holding up your *Left-Finger* gently, helping with the outward *Legg*: And so you see there is a great deal of difference betwixt the *Reynes* separated in both your *Hands*, and when you have the *Bridle* only in your *Left-Hand*, (for the help is with your *Hands* :) This is perfectly for *Terra a Terra*, and *Demi-Voltoes*.

I have told you a *Bitt* is a strange *Engine*; for, wheresoever you pull the *Cheeks*, the *Mouth* goes contrary; If you work the outward *Reyn*, you pull the outward *Cheek* to you, and the *Mouth* goes contrary, but in *Corvets*, and then it works in the middle of the *Curb*: For *Terra a Terra*, when you pull the *Cheeks* to you, then his *Mouth* goes contrary, and looks into the *Turn*

of Dressing Horses. 007

as he should do, and then the *Curb* works on the other side, contrary to the *Cheek*, of what *Hand* so ever you go: If you pull the *Cheeks* strait, the *Mouth* goes down; but when you put your *Hand*, as far forward as you can, to the perpendicular Line, then that works hardest on the *Curb*. If you pull the inward *Reyn* to your *Knee*, or from your *Body*, *Tribacato*, that it layes the *Cheek* even to the *Eye* of the *Bitt*, then it works not at all upon the *Curb*, so great a difference there is betwixt the *Carvezone* and the *Bit*; For *Terra a Terra*, when you pull the inward *Reyn* to your outward *Shoulder*, then the *Reyn* is a great deal within the *Pommel*, which *Hand* soever you go on; but whensoever you help with the outward *Reyn*, then your *Hand* must be three *Fingers* above the *Pommel*, and as many *Fingers* before it: This is certainly the Truth of the *Bitt* and *Bridle*. When I work the outward *Reyn* of the *Bridle*, I finde his *Croup* is lost, although I help with the outward *Legge*, because it is *Legg* and *Reyn* both of a side; but *Legg* and *Reyn* contrary works his *Croup*, and keeps back his outward *Shoulder*.

The

008 The New Method

The *Cavezone* being upon his *Nose*, is contrary to the *Bit*; for if you pull up the *Cavezone's* *Reyn*, you pull up his *Head*; and if you pull it down, you pull down his *Head*.

As for the *false Reyns*, It is a very false thing; for the *Reyns* being tyed to the *Arches* of the *Bit*, when you pull the *Reyns* it slacks the *Curb*, and never works on it, like a *Snaffle*; nay, it is so much worse than a *Snaffle*, for a *Snaffle* will go to the *Weeks* of his *Mouth*, or *Lipps*; and though the *Curb* be slack, yet it will not suffer it to go so high, and therefore gawles all his *Barrs*. And this is the *Truth* of the *false Reyns*.



OF





OF
BITTS, & of the USE
OF THEM.

THE *Writers* of Books, and the *Horse-men* now Living, that think themselves Wise, and great Masters, by the diversity of *Bits*, shew themselves full of Ignorance, and Simple People, to imagine, That a peice of *Iron* in a Horse's *Mouth* can bring him *Knowledge*; no more than a *Book* in a *Boys* Hand can, at first, make him *Read*; or, a pair of *Spurs*, planted on Ignorant *Heels*, can make one *Ride* well.

There is however, a Propriety to fit every Horse, according to the Turn of his *Neck*; shorter or longer, wider or narrower; the Mouth, the liberty, wider or narrower; the Eye longer or shorter; the Eye straight, or more bending; the Branches stronger, or weaker; the Curb equal; the Hooks according to the just measure of the

Ssss 2 *Bitt*,

244 The New Method

Bitt; the Curb three good round Files, with one Ring, where 'tis Fastened; and two Rings, or Malions, where 'tis Curbed, handsomely furnish'd with Pesses, not too bigg; richer, or poorer, according as you please: Not two Rowes of little Chains, tied to the *Bitt*, within his *Mouth*, only One at the most.

And this Rule must ever be Observ'd, to have as little *Iron* in your Horse's *Mouth* as possible you can: If his *Tongue* be too bigg, the Liberty must be the wider; if his *Tongue* be too little, the Liberty the less; but you must take heed, that the *Apuy*, or Resting place of the *Bitt*, be never made upon the Liberty, for it will Gaul him; but the *Apuy* must be made in the True place, where it ought to be, which is about Ones Little Fingers breadth beyond the Liberty, on both sides of the *Bitt*; and the *Bitt* to be Ones Fingers breadth above his *Tusshes*: The Branches are strong, when the Reys are slackt; those Branches that comes Back to his Neck most, are Weak; those that go Forward from his Neck, are Strong; and good reason, for you have the greater Pull.

You

of Dressing Horses. 345

You must measure with a little String, or a piece of a Riding-Rod, from the Eye of the *Bitt*, strait Down; and if the *Cheeks* be within that Line, they are Weak; and the more they are within that Line, they are still the Weaker: If the *Cheeks* be without that Line, they are Strong; and the more they are without that Line, they are the Stronger.

You must consider another Thing, which is, That the *Cheeks* are like a *Lever*, the Longer it is, it hath the more Force, and the Shorter it is, the less Force; for a Boy, with a long *Lever*, will Lift up more than the Strongest Man, with a short *Lever*: And so in a *Bitt*, the Longer the *Cheeks* are, they have the more Force, and the Shorter they are, the less Force: For that which is the furthest from the *Center*, hath the most Force for Lifting or Pulling; and that which is nearest the *Center*, the least Force: So very short *Cheeks*, make them as Strong as you will, cannot have that Force that longer *Cheeks* have.

If a Horse hold Up his *Head*, and Out, then they have shorter *Branches*, and stronger, to Pull

T t t t him

346 The New Method

him Down, and In; wherein they are half Right: So if a Horse holds his *Head* too Low, and brings it In too Round, so that he Armes himself against the *Bitt*, which is, To rest the *Branches* upon his *Breast*, so that you have no Pull, or Command of him at all; because this *Vice* is Contrary to holding Up his *Head*, and Out; for which *Vice* they had shorter *Cheeks*, and stronger, to bring it In: So Arming against the *Bitt*, being the Contrary *Vice*, they think they must have the *Bitt* made Contrary; they must have a Long One to put it Up; and since a strong *Branch* pull'd him Down, they must have a weak *Branch* to put Up his *Head*; wherein they are mightily Deceived: For when a Horse Armes himself against the *Bitt*, certainly Long *Branches* will sooner come to his *Breast*, than Short Ones; and it is as certain, that a Weak *Branch* will come sooner to his *Breast*, than a Strong *Branch*; therefore they are so much Deceived.

As for a Horse that Armes himself against the *Bitt*, you must have a Short *Branch* that will not touch his *Breast*, and a Strong *Branch* to keep It
yet

of Dressing Horses. 347

yet further from his *Breast*: The *Hooks* of the *Curb* ought to be made a little Longer, and so Just as not to Hurt, or to Offend the sides of his *Cheeks*; and if the *Curb* do not lye in his right Place, two little *Iron Rings* fastened close to the Top of the *Hooks*, to keep them Steady, and Fast, is the best Remedy; All other Devices in *Bitts* or *Curbs*, are Idle and Ignorant things.

THE

BITTS *that follow are the* BEST.

1. A Plain Canon, with Branches *A la Conneftable*.
2. A Plain Scatch, with Branches *A la Conneftable*.
3. A Canon *A la Pignatell*; which is a gentle falling and moving Up and Down, and so Low as not to hurt the Roof of the Horse's Mouth; which is the Best, certainly, for all Horses that have Tongues, which I am sure they would not have Prest; therefore I Recom-

T t t t 2 mend

348 The New Method

mend that Liberty above all Things in *Bitts*, and the Branches *A la Conneftable*.

To Difcharge a Horſes *Lips*, I would have *Olives* with the Liberty *A la Pignatell*; thoſe *Olives* coming ſhort a little of the *Bitt*, with ſome little Rings, gives Liberty for his *Lips*, and Difcharges them; and the Branches, *A la Conneftable*.

But indeed, I would have but two ſorts of *Bitts*, which is, 1. The *Canon A la Pignatell*. 2. And the *Olives A la Pignatell*, to Difcharge his *Lips*, if need be; but the *Branches* alwayes *A la Conneftable*.

Thus you have the Truth of *Bitts* brought into a narrow Compaſs; there is little in them to bring a Horſe to Underſtanding, on which we muſt Work, and that is, his *Reaſon*, by the Favour of the *Logicians* Diſtinction of Reaſonable and Irreaſonable Creatures; for were they as good *Horſe-men* as *Schollers*, they would have made another Diſtinction.

Well then, it is not a Piece of *Iron* can make a Horſe Knowing; if it were, a *Bitt-Maker* would
be

of Dressing Horses. 349

be the best *Horse-man*. No! It is the Art of appropriated *Lessons*; fitting every Horse according to his Nature, Disposition, and Strength; Punishing, and, with good *Lessons*, Rectifying his *Vices*; Rewarding him, and Preserving him in his *Horse-Vertues*; and not trusting to an Ignorant peice of *Iron* call'd a *Bitt*: For, I will make a perfect Horse with a *Cavezone* with^{out} a *Bitt*, better than any man shall with his *Bitt* without a *Cavezone*; so highly is the *Cavezone*, rightly used, to be esteemed; For I had a *Barbe* at *Antwerp*, that went Perfectly with the *Cavezone* without a *Bitt*, which was true Art, and not the Ignorance and Folly of *Bitts*.

The famous *Pignatell* at *Naples*, never used but simple *Bitts*; which made the Ignorant wonder how he could *Dress* Horses so Perfectly, with no more sorts of *Bitts*: But he told them, it was their Ignorance made them wonder at his Art. And so that great Master, in this Art, *Monsieur de Pluvinel*, did the same: For, he had always a plain *Cavezone*, and not too sharp; and to make it Gentler, did always Line it with double Leather

Uuuu at

350 The New Method

at the least; for a Horse, to Wry his *Head*, or suck up his *Litt*, or put his *Tongue* over the *Bitt*, it never happens in my *Mannage*, or *Method*; because the Liberty *A la Pignatel* hinders his *Tongue* for going over the *Bitt*; and working with the *Cavezone*, with truly Slacking the *Bitt*, those things never happens, or do ever Horses put out their *Tongues*.

OF THE IMPERFECTIONS OF A HORSE'S MOUTH.

ALL our Writers in *Horse-manship*, the great Masters, in that Profession, (as well Old as Modern) are mightily Troubled and Concerned, about the *Vices* and *Imperfections* of a Horse's *Mouth*. As for Example; The first, when a Horse pulls, and sucks up his *Tongue*: The second, when he puts his *Tongue* over the *Bitt*: The third,

of Dressing Horses. 351

third, when he doubles it about the *Bitt*: And the fourth, when he hangs his *Tongue* out of his *Mouth*, either Forward, or of one side of his *Mouth*: For all, and every one of these *Vices*, our great Doctors in *Horse-manship*, hath taken a great deal of Pains, with many curious Devices, and many Inventions, with *Bitts*, to Cure them; and take great Pains, and much Labour about it; so much, as their several Writings, about these particular *Vices* of the *Mouth*, would make a great Volume; when the truth is, Most of their *Bitts*, to Remedy these *Imperfections*, are much greater *Vices* than those they would Remedy; and their *Physick* the greatest *Disease*, and brings more Inconveniencies with it, than the *Vices* they go about to Cure.

The truth is, in short, I wish a Horse had none of those Faults; but put the case he hath, As putting out his *Tongue*, or putting his *Tongue* over the *Bitt*, or sucking or drawing of his *Tongue* up, or doubling of it: All these I wish were not; but if they be, the Horse is not prejudiced at all by them, for he will have as good an *Apu* with them, as without them; and will be as firm and steady of his

U u u u 2 Head,

352 The New Method

Head, and as terrible of the *Barrs*, and the *Curb*, as if those *Vices* were not; for the *Bitt* rests, and works still, upon his *Barrs*; and the *Curb* works in his due Place, where it ought, in spite of his *Tongue*, let it be where it will, or not be; for when a Horse's *Tongue* is Cut off, Doth that hinder the *Bitt*, for working on the *Barrs*, or the *Curb*, for working in his due Place? Not at all: Nay, I have known a Horse's *Tongue* quite pull'd out by the Roots, and yet he went as well as ever he did in his Life; so that is nothing; for the *Bitt* still works upon the *Barrs*, and the *Curb*, where it ought: And a Horse with a *Tongue*, and put it where he will; or a Horse without a *Tongue*, is no hinderance to a Horse that hath a good *Apu*, or is well settled on the *Hand*; no hinderance in the world: So that now you see, What vain Curiosities, to no purpose, Our great Masters hath troubled themselves about, and pulled many of their Readers, and tormented the poor Horses to boot, to no End in the world.

FINIS.



Excellent *NAMES* for
HORSES of **MANNAGE.**

ITALIAN and **SPANISH.**

B ella Donna	<i>Corfiero Neapolitano</i>
Bell in Campo	<i>Rubicano</i>
Desperato	<i>Signiore</i>
Argentino	<i>Delitia</i>
Dorato	<i>Nobilissimo</i>
Gatto	<i>Dolce</i>
Gatino	<i>Bona Natura</i>
Rondinello	<i>Bellissimo</i>
Felice	<i>Bonissimo</i>
Lampo	<i>Mille Fiore</i>
Soura Speransa	<i>Almenara</i>
Capitano	<i>Nuntio</i>
Lupo	<i>Dracone</i>
Mabaumilia	<i>Arogatillo</i>
Mala testa	<i>Diamante</i>
Melancholia	<i>Arrogante</i>
Genette	<i>Il Bravo</i>
	X xxx <i>Cavallo</i>

Cavallo Imperiale

Grandissimo

Emperatore

Illustrissimo

F R E N C H.

F *Avory*

La Mervelle

Mignon

Le Miracle

Balott

Le Courtau

Galliard

Le Fripon

Bonit

Le Larron

Perle

Le Mechant

Rouffin

L' Emerillon

Sans Pareil

L' Admirable

La Perfection

Le Diligent

Le Delicat

Le Parangon

Isabelle d' Espagne

Le Loyall

Monsieur

Le Sensible

Le Hober

L' Enrage

Le Petit Barbe

Le Fougeux

Le Grand Barbe

Le Malitieux

Le Turc

L' Endormy

Le Petit Boutton

Le Countre Coeur

Le Superbe

L' Amour

Le Bouffon

La Maitresse

Le Roy

<i>Le Roy</i>	<i>Le Jeteur</i>
<i>Le Prince</i>	<i>Le Rude</i>
<i>Le Duc</i>	<i>Le Vilain</i>
<i>L' Empereur</i>	<i>Le Coquin</i>
<i>Le Collonel</i>	<i>Le Poultron</i>
<i>Le General</i>	<i>Le Pour</i>
<i>Le Cardinal</i>	<i>Le Courageux</i>
<i>Le Pape</i>	<i>Le Desprise</i>
<i>La Tempeste</i>	<i>Le Hardi</i>
<i>Le Compagnion</i>	<i>Galliardon</i>
<i>Le Comarade</i>	<i>La Mouche</i>
<i>L' Amie</i>	<i>Le Trompeur</i>
<i>L' Enemy</i>	<i>La Rencontre</i>
<i>Le Philosophe</i>	<i>Le Monton</i>
<i>La Vielle</i>	<i>Le Fant</i>
<i>Le Diable</i>	<i>Le Lion</i>
<i>Le President</i>	<i>Le Renard</i>
<i>Le Juge</i>	<i>L' Elefant</i>
<i>Le Capritieux</i>	<i>Le Pegase</i>
<i>Le Quereleux</i>	<i>Le Volant</i>
<i>Le Piqueur</i>	<i>Via Lactea</i>
<i>L' Turogne</i>	<i>Le Determine</i>
<i>Le Fantasque</i>	<i>La Grenouille</i>
<i>Le Tenez-ferme</i>	<i>Le Gallant</i>
X x x x 2	<i>Le Cavalier</i>

<i>Le Cavalier</i>	<i>La Bataille</i>
<i>Mon Roy</i>	<i>La Beante</i>
<i>Le Soldat</i>	<i>L'Estoile</i>
<i>Le Conquerneur</i>	<i>L'Enione</i>
<i>Le Confelien</i>	<i>Mars</i>
<i>Le Terrible</i>	<i>Jupiter</i>

FOR
DUTCH HORSES.

L <i>E Pisante</i>	<i>Le Swifs</i>
<i>Myn Heare</i>	<i>Frison</i>
<i>Younker</i>	<i>Urfelino</i>



